

Primary
3

AL-BAHER

Connect Plus

Parents'
Guide

First Term



Contents

Let's remember (3)

Theme (1) Who am I? (Living healthy)

Unit (1) At the track (10)

Unit (2) Body matters (48)

Unit (3) What's on your plate? (84)

Review (1) (122)

Non-fiction reader: Hospitals (124)

Theme (2) The world around me (Taking care of our world)

Unit (4) In the wild (128)

Unit (5) All about water (170)

Unit (6) What is a flood? (209)

Listening (248)

Let's remember

Animals & Birds حيوانات وطيور



rhino

وحيد القرن



giraffe

زرافة



hippo

فرس النهر



penguin

بطريق



flamingo

طائر الفلامنجو

Musical instruments آلات موسيقية



guitar

الجيتار



oud

آلة العود



flute

الناي / المزمار



piano

بيانو

Transportation وسائل المواصلات



train

قطار



ferry

عبارة



ship

سفينة



plane

طائرة



bicycle

دراجة

Directions الاتجاهات



turn right

اتجه يمينًا



turn left

اتجه يسارًا



go straight

سر في خط مستقيم

Jobs وظائف



butcher
جزار



cook
طباخ



fisherman
صبياد سمك



mechanic
ميكانيكي



engineer
مهندس

Communication & Technology اتصالات وتكنولوجيا



tablet
تابلت



cell phone
تليفون محمول



postcard
بطاقة بريدية



printer
طابعة



stamp
طابع بريد

Geography and places جغرافيا وأماكن



forest
غابة



River Nile
نهر النيل



island
جزيرة



bridge
كوبري



mountain
جبل



lightning
البرق



gas station
محطة غاز



fountain
نافورة



tower
برج



bakery
مخبز

Adjectives صفات



angry
غضبان



kind
عطوف



curious
فضولي



excited
متحمس



sad
حزين



interested
مهتم



worried
قلق



tired
مُتعب



bored
شاعر بالملل



quiet
هادئ

Phonics

tr /tr/



truck
شاحنة



train
قطار

pr /pr/



present
هدية



press
يضغط

air /eə/



chair
كرسي



hair
شعر

wh /w/



whale
حوت

ph /f/



dolphin
دولفين

ear /ɪə/



ear

أذن



beard

لحية

sp /sp/



spring

الربيع



sprint

عدو قصير سريع

st /st/



strong

قوى



string

خيوط

pl /pl/



plane

طائرة



plant

نبات

cl /kl/



cloud

سحابة



clock

ساعة حائط

fl /fl/



flag

علم



flood

فيضان

Silent letters الحروف الصامتة



lamb

خمل



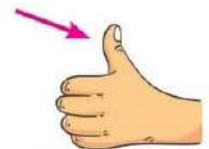
wrist

رسغ - معصم



knot

عقدة



thumb

إصبع الإبهام



Language

because

لأن

We went shopping **because** we needed some paper.

to

لكي

She went to the bakery **to** buy some bread.

but

لكن

They went to the butcher's, **but** it was closed.

so

لذلك

It was sunny, **so** we went to the beach.

like + (v + ing)

Grandpa **likes** reading the newspaper.

Let's + inf.

Let's play a board game.

Comparatives

(more / less) + long (adj. / adv.) + than

- Hippos run **more quickly than** elephants.
- Giraffes run **less quickly than** hippos.

Superlatives

the + (most / least) + long (adj. / adv.)

- Elephants run **the least quickly** of them all.
- Hippos run **the most quickly** of them all.

Form

used to اعتاد أن

Subject + used to + inf. ...

- 100 years ago, people **used to** **write** letters.

Negative

Subject + didn't use to + inf.

- 100 years ago, people **didn't use** to have video chats.

Listen and read.



- Ticket agent** : Hello! **Can** I help you?
- Nesma** : Yes. We **would** like to go to Luxor, please.
- Ticket agent** : How **many** people are traveling?
- Nesma** : One adult and one child, please.
- Ticket agent** : **Here** are your tickets. Give **them** to your dad, please.
- Nesma** : Which platform do we **need** to go to?
- Ticket agent** : It's platform three.
- Nesma** : Thank you!

General Activities

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

- 1) ha__ __ 2) __ __ uck 3) __ __ esent 4) dol__ __ in
5) __ __ ag 6) __ __ ound 7) __ __ rong 8) __ __ ant

2 Choose the correct word.

- 1) Grandpa likes (read - reads - reading) books.
2) Let's (play - playing - to play) football.
3) We went to the park (because - to - but) ride our bikes.
4) I went home (to - because - so) I was tired.
5) 100 years ago, people (use - uses - used) to write letters.
6) 100 years ago, people didn't (use - uses - used) to have video chats.

3 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

- 1) many - people - How - traveling - are - ?

.....

- 2) went - She - the bakery - to buy - bread - to - some - .

.....

- 3) interested - I'm - very - website - in - this - .

.....

- 4) would - Where - like - you - go - to - ?

.....

Unit 1

At the track

في مضمار السباق



Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

A sports event: athlete, compete, distance, event, jump, measure, medal, race, throw, track, win

Being a good friend: apologize, have fun, listen, make fun of, pressure someone, spread rumors, support, tell secrets

Language

اللغة

- I **think** the athlete on the left **will win**.

- It **won't be** easy to win today!

- **Will they be** tired?

Reading

القراءة

- A text about a friend; a text about world records

Phonics

الصوتيات

Soft "c": race, city, distance, citadel

Hard "c": camel, cookie, plastic

Life skills

المهارات الحياتية

- **Self-management:** talking about feelings

Values

القيم

- Perseverance

- Compassion

Issues and challenges

القضايا والتحديات

- Community participation

- Loyalty and belonging

Integrated cross-curriculum topics

التكامل عبر موضوعات المنهج

- **Math:** recording data, measuring in meters and centimeters, making a graph

Lesson (1)

Vocabulary

Listen and say.



race

سباق



athlete

لاعب رياضي



win

يفوز



track

مضمار السباق



throw

يرمي



measure

يقيس



compete

يتنافس



medal

ميدالية



distance

مسافة

Vocabulary

sports event	حدث رياضي	competition	مسابقة	quickly	بسرعة
different	مختلف	exciting	مثير	long jump	الوثب الطويل

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
hope	يتمنى	hoped	ran
compete	ينافس	competed	won
measure	يقيس	measured	got
jump	يقفز	jumped	wore

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look, listen and read.



Today, we're at the **track**. There's a big **sports event**. Lots of **athletes** from different schools are **competing**.

اليوم، نحن في مضمار السباق. هناك حدث رياضي كبير. يتنافس الكثير من اللاعبين الرياضيين من مدارس مختلفة.

Look! They are **wearing** red, blue, green and black.

انظروا! إنهم يرتدون اللون الأحمر والأزرق والأخضر والأسود.

There are **competitions** in running, jumping and **throwing**. I'm watching the **long jump**. I think the athlete wearing red will **win**.

يوجد مسابقات في رياضة الجري والقفز والرمي. أنا أشاهد رياضة الوثب الطويل، أعتقد أن اللاعب الذي يرتدي اللون الأحمر سيفوز.

Read the following.

I'm at a sports event today with Mommy and my brother. Some athletes are running. The track is 800 meters around the field. The race is exciting- the athletes are running very quickly. I hope Waleed wins today!

There is a throwing competition, too. You have to throw the ball as far as you can. Three meters is a good distance for throwing the ball. Someone measures how far the athletes throw the ball.

That athlete competed in a sports event and won. He can jump really high! Now, he is getting a medal!

أنا في حدث رياضي اليوم مع والدتي وأخي. بعض اللاعبين الرياضيين يمارسون رياضة الجري. مضمار السباق طوله 800 متر حول الملعب. السباق مثير - يجري اللاعبون الرياضيون بسرعة جدًا. أتمنى أن يفوز وليد اليوم! يوجد مسابقة رمي أيضًا. عليك أن ترمي الكرة بعيدًا بقدر ما تستطيع. ثلاثة أمتار مسافة جيدة لرمي الكرة. يقيس شخص إلى أي مدى رمي اللاعبون الكرة. تنافس ذلك اللاعب الرياضي في الحدث الرياضي وفاز. إنه يستطيع القفز عاليًا جدًا! والآن يحصل على ميدالية!

To ask someone about his favorite sports events:



Help your child read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

athletes - win - throwing - event - bus

القليوبية 2025

We are at the track. There is a big sports 1) Lots of 2) are competing. They are wearing red, blue, green and black. There are competitions in running, jumping and 3) I think the athlete wearing red will 4)

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm at a sports event today with Mommy and my brother. Some athletes are running. The track is 800 meters around the field. The race is exciting. The athletes are running very quickly. I hope Waleed wins today! There is a throwing competition, too. You have to throw the ball as far as you can. Three meters is a good distance for throwing the ball.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b or c.

- 1) Some are running.
a) pupils b) teachers c) athletes
- 2) The race is
a) exciting b) boring c) frightening

B) Answer the following questions.

3) With whom do you go to the sports event today?

.....

4) How long is the track?

.....

5) How are the athlete running?

.....

6) Is there a throwing competition?

.....

Lesson (1)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- 1) At sports events, some are running.
a) athletes b) races c) medals
- 2) You have to the ball as far as you can.
a) run b) jump c) throw
- 3) The athlete in a sports event and won.
a) competed b) measured c) threw
- 4) Waleed wins today. He is getting a
a) medal b) race c) distance
- 5) There is a big sports today.
a) event b) distance c) track

4 Read, order and write.

- 1) like - I - and - running - jumping - .

الإسكندرية - المنارة 2025

- 2) sports - like - What - do - event - you - ?

- 3) 're - at - we - track - Today, - the - .

5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements.

At the track

القاهرة 2025

(friend - running - medal)

The Future Simple زمن المستقبل البسيط

Usage To predict what will happen in the future.

يستخدم للتنبؤ بما سوف يحدث في المستقبل.

- I **think** the event **will be** amazing.

Note

We can use "think" to make prediction.

Form

Subject (فاعل) + **will + inf.** (مصدر الفعل) + (باقي الجملة)

- Hana **will win** the competition.

- She **'ll be** happy.

'll = will

Keywords

tomorrow

غداً

next (Sunday

(الأحد /) القادم

in the future

في المستقبل

I think

أعتقد

- He **will go** to the park **tomorrow**.

- **Next Friday** they **will run** for a competition.

Negative

Subject (فاعل) + will not (won't) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + (باقي الجملة)

- It **won't be** easy to win today.

(Yes / No) question

Will + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)?

- **Will** it **be** a good competition?
- **Yes**, it **will**.
- **No**, it **won't**.

Wh- question

Question word + will + subject (فاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)?

- **When will** the event **be**?
- It will be **tomorrow**.

- Choose the correct answer.

- 1) The winner will (being - be - is) happy .
- 2) Our school will (get - gets - getting) a medal today .
- 3) It (isn't - wasn't - won't) be easy to win today .
- 4) A) Will they win? B) Yes, they (will - have - are) win.
- 5) A) (Is - Are - Will) they be tired? B) No, they won't.

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative صيغة المقارنة

تستخدم عند المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة أو حال.

Short adj. (صفة قصيرة) + **er + than**

high → higher than

fast → faster than

- Ahmed is faster than Amir.

- Dina is jumping higher than Lara.

Superlative صيغة التفضيل

تستخدم عند المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة في صفة أو حال.

the + short adj. (صفة قصيرة) + **est**

high → the highest

fast → the fastest

Ahmed is the fastest boy.

Dina is jumping the highest.

Note

Irregular forms صفات غير منتظمة

far بعيد → farther than → the farthest

- Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Youssef jumped (far - farther - farthest) than Ramy.
- 2) Ramy jumped the (farther - farthest - far).
- 3) Reem ran faster (the - then - than) Mariam.
- 4) Talia ran (than - the - then) fastest.
- 5) Dina jumped (higher - highest - high) than Lara.
- 6) Was Adam (fast - faster - fastest) than Tarek?

Asking about distance, height and speed

السؤال عن المسافة والارتفاع والسرعة

How far?

كم المسافة؟

- **How far** can he jump?

- He can jump **four meters**.

How high?

كم الارتفاع؟

- **How high** can she jump?

- She can jump **one meter**.

How fast?

كم السرعة؟

- **How fast** can he run?

- He can run **100 meters in 15 seconds**.

- Choose the correct answer.

1) How (**many - much - far**) can you jump?

2) (**How - When - What**) fast can you run?

3) How (**fat - high - slow**) can you jump?

4) He can jump four (**meters - grams - seconds**).

5) (**When - Where - How**) far can she jump?

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- 1) I think the event will good.
a) be b) being c) is
- 2) they be tired today? - No, they won't.
a) Will b) Is c) Are
- 3) The winner happy.
a) are b) does c) will be
- 4) Will they the race? - Yes, they will.
a) wins b) won c) win
- 5) I think Omar a medal.
a) get b) gets c) will get
- 6) Amira get a medal. She didn't jump high.
a) won't b) will c) is
- 7) I think Hoda win. She is good at running.
a) won't b) will c) will be
- 8) Dina enter the throwing competition? - Yes, she will.
a) Is b) Are c) Will
- 9) It won't easy to win today.
a) are b) was c) be
- 10) He runs very quickly. I think he win a medal.
a) be b) is c) will
- 11) Will they win? - No, they
a) isn't b) won't c) doesn't
- 12) The blue whale is the animal in the world. القاهرة 2025
a) big b) biggest c) bigger
- 13) Nada jumped higher her sister. المنصورة 2025
a) then b) than c) that

Lessons (2 & 3)

- 14) Ramy jumped the
a) far b) farther c) farthest
- 15) Reem ran than Amira.
a) faster b) fast c) fastest
- 16) Who is the one?
a) slow b) slower c) slowest
- 17) Was Amir than Adam?
a) faster b) fast c) fastest
- 18) He is fastest athlete.
a) the b) than c) that
- 19) How can she run? - She can run 100 meters in 15 seconds.
a) high b) many c) fast
- 20) How can Sara jump? - She can jump one meter.
a) high b) much c) many

2 Read, order and write.

1) the - doing - A boy - long - is - jump - .

المنصورة 2025

2) really - can - Rania - jump - high - .

القاهرة - حلوان 2025

3) fast - How - he - can - run - ?

4) jumped - Dina - than - Lara - higher - .

5) can - far - How - jump - she - ?

6) Sara - faster - Mariam - ran - than - .

7) the - Who - fastest - was - ?

Lessons (4 & 5)

Reading and writing Skills: Reading and listening

Vocabulary

warm up	يقوم بعملية الإحماء (قبل التمرين)	support a friend	يسانّد صديق
come second	يأتي في المركز الثاني	try harder	يبذل جهد أكبر
together	معًا / مع بعض	runner	عداء / متسابق

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past		Present		Past	
record	يسجل	recorded		come	يأتي	came	
train	يتدرب	trained		bring	يحضر	brought	
finish	ينتهي	finished		know	يعرف	knew	

Important expressions and prepositions

do better	يؤدي بشكل أفضل	worry about	يقلق بشأن
record time	يسجل الوقت	get fit	يصبح لائقًا بدنيًا
have fun	يستمتع	get ready	يجهّز / يستعد
How often...?	كم مرة؟	do a lot of exercise	يتدرب كثيرًا

Definitions

warm up	get your body ready to do exercise يقوم بعملية الإحماء (قبل التمرين)
support a friend	help a friend يساعد صديق (يسانّد صديق)
come second	be the next person to finish after the winner يأتي في المركز الثاني
try harder	work hard to do better يبذل جهدًا أكبر

Why is Nesma training?

لماذا تتدرب نسمة؟

Hello! My name's Nesma and I'm at the track with my friend, Sara. Sara is an athlete, so she does a lot of exercise. We come here three times a week. She comes with her parents once on the weekend, too.



مرحبًا! اسمي نسمة وأنا في مضمار السباق مع صديقتي سارة. وهي لاعبة رياضية. لذلك فهي تتدرب كثيرًا. نحن نأتي هنا ثلاث مرات أسبوعيًا. إنها تأتي مع والديها مرة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أيضًا.

Sara is a runner, and she has a big competition next month. I think she'll win! I'm training with her to **support** her, and it helps me **get fit**. We **warm up** together and we have fun! I **record** her race times, too.

سارة عداءة ولديها مسابقة كبيرة الشهر القادم. أعتقد أنها سوف تفوز! أنا أتدرب معها لمساندتها، وهذا يساعدني أن أصبح لائقة بدنيًا. نقوم بعملية الإحماء معًا ونستمتع! وأسجل أوقات سباقها. أيضًا.

Her best event is the 200-meter race. She's very fast! Sara was in a race last month, but she didn't win. She **came second**, so she wants to **try harder**.

She finished in 35 seconds. She wants to be faster next time.

الحدث الأفضل لها هو سباق الـ 200 متر. إنها سريعة جدًا! كانت سارة في سباق الشهر الماضي، ولكنها لم تفز. أتت في المركز الثاني، لذلك فهي تريد أن تبذل جهدًا أكبر. أنهت الجري في 35 ثانية. تريد أن تكون أسرع في المرة القادمة.

Sara always eats healthy food. We bring some fruit to the track to have a snack, and we drink lots of water.

سارة دائمًا تأكل طعامًا صحيًا. نحضر بعض الفاكهة إلى ميدان السباق لتتناول وجبة خفيفة ونشرب الكثير من الماء.

I like helping Sara because she's a really good friend to me.

She always listens when I have a problem, or if I'm worried about something. So that's why I want to help her as much as I can!

أحب مساعدة سارة لأنها صديقة جيدة بالنسبة لي. ودائمًا تستمع إليّ عندما يكون لدي مشكلة، أو أشعر بقلق من شيء ما. ولهذا

السبب أريد مساعدتها قدر استطاعتي!



Language

Conjunctions أدوات الربط

A conjunction is a word that joins words and sentences.

أداة الربط هي كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل مع بعض.

and و تستخدم "and" للربط بين الأفكار المتشابهة To join similar ideas

- I like running **and** jumping.

but ولكن تستخدم "but" لبيان التناقض بين شيئين To show contrast

- I like running **but** I'm not very fast.

because بسبب تستخدم "because" لبيان السبب To show reason

- It's hard to run today **because** it's hot.

so لذلك تستخدم "so" لبيان النتيجة To show the result

- He has a race next week, **so** he trains every day.

or أو تستخدم "or" للتخيير في حالة النفي To give a choice in negative

- She **doesn't** like throwing **or** jumping. She likes running.

Choose the correct.

- 1) I like running (and - because - but) jumping.
- 2) It's hard to run today (so - because - or) it's hot.
- 3) I like running (but - to - or) I'm not very fast.
- 4) Amir is a good runner, (because - to - so) I think he'll win the race.
- 5) He doesn't like throwing (but - so - or) running.
- 6) Omar ran in the race (but - or - and) he didn't win.
- 7) I like helping Adam (so - but - because) he is my friend.

Ask and answer about sports.

اسأل وأجب عن الألعاب الرياضية.



Which sport do you think is easy?

أي رياضة تعتقد أنها سهلة؟

I think running.

أعتقد أنها الجري.

Do you enjoy running?

هل تستمتع بالجري؟

Yes, I do.

نعم.

How often do you do sports?

كم مرة تمارس الرياضة؟

Three times a week.

ثلاث مرات في الأسبوع.



General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

exercise - friend - water - food - fit

الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2025

My name is Sara. I am at the track with my 1)
Heba. She does a lot of 2) She eats healthy 3)
She drinks lots of 4)

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sara is 12 years old. Sara loves to play football in the park.
She plays every afternoon with her friends. They have a lot of fun
together. Sometimes, they also play basketball when the weather
is nice. Sara is a good girl.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2025

- 1) Sara plays with her
a) friends b) father c) mother
- 2) Sara is a girl.
a) sad b) bad c) good

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What does Sara love to play?
- 4) How old is Sara?
- 5) Where does Sara play?
- 6) When do they play basketball?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- 1) I like bananas, I don't like apples. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2025
a) so b) and c) but
- 2) I don't like bananas, I like apples. الجيزة 2025
a) or b) but c) and
- 3) I like running jumping. الشرقية - العاشر 2025
a) but b) or c) and

Lessons (4 & 5)

- 4) Ali likes orange juice it's healthy. **أسيوط 2025**
 a) but b) because c) or
- 5) My sister likes reading writing. **الإسكندرية - المنتزه 2025**
 a) but b) and c) so
- 6) I like English Arabic. **الإسكندرية - العجمي 2025**
 a) but b) and c) so
- 7) sport do you think is easy? - I think running.
 a) Which b) Who c) Where
- 8) How do you do sports? - Three times a week.
 a) far b) high c) often
- 9) He doesn't play tennis basketball.
 a) and b) so c) or
- 10) Amir is a good runner I think he will win the race. **WB**
 a) so b) but c) or
- 11) Mariam likes running doing the high jump. **WB**
 a) because b) and c) but
- 12) Wael came second this year , he'll try harder next year. **WB**
 a) so b) because c) or
- 13) Dalia ran the race, she didn't win a medal. **WB**
 a) and b) but c) because

4 Read, order and write.

- 1) like - and - swimming - I - jumping - . **القاهرة 2025**

- 2) throwing - She - like - or - doesn't - jumping - . **المنصورة 2025**

- 3) often - you - How - do - sports - do - ?

- 4) sport - you - Which - do - is - think - easy - ?

Lesson (6)

Values Reading and writing

Listen and say.



have fun

يمرح



say sorry/apologize

يعتذر



support

يساند / يدعم



make fun of

يسخر من



spread rumors

ينشر شائعات



listen

يستمع



tell secrets

يفشي الأسرار



pressure

يضغط / يُلح (على شخص)

Definitions

make fun of

to laugh at someone

يسخر من

tell secrets

to say things someone doesn't want you to talk about it

يخبر أسرار

spread rumors

to tell stories about someone

ينشر شائعات

pressure

to try to persuade someone

يضغط على

support

to give help to (someone)

يدعم / يساند

apologize

to say sorry

يعتذر

have fun

to enjoy yourself

يستمتع

listen

to take notice of someone

يستمع

Lesson (6)

My rules for being a good friend!

قواعدي لتكون صديقًا جيدًا (صالحًا)!

You shouldn't do



Never make fun of your friends! It isn't kind to laugh at people.

لا تسخر أبدًا من أصدقائك! ليس من اللطف أن تضحك على الناس.

Never tell your friend's secrets to other people.

لا تخبر الآخرين أبدًا بأسرار صديقك.

Never spread rumors about your friends.

لا تنشر شائعات عن أصدقائك.

Never pressure your friend to do something he or she doesn't want to do.

لا تضغط أبدًا على صديقك لكي يفعل شيئًا هو أو هي لا يريد القيام به.

You should do



Listen to your friend's ideas.

أن تستمع إلى أفكار صديقك.

Support your friend.

أن (تشجع / تساند) صديقك.

If you make your friend sad, it's good to apologize.

إذا جعلت صديقك حزينًا، من الجيد أن تعتذر.

Saying sorry is important.

أن تقول آسف شيء هام.

Have fun together!

استمتعوا معًا!

Look and read.

One day, Tamer was sad when he came home from school.

"What's the matter?" asked his mom. "Sherif asked me why I didn't want to do the swimming competition.

I told him that I'm scared of water, but it was a secret.

He told Adam and Wael, and now everyone knows.

They are making fun of me." "That wasn't very kind

of Sherif," said Tamer's mom. The next day, Tamer was a lot happier.

"How was school today, Tamer?" his mom asked.

"It was better!" said Tamer, smiling. "Sherif apologized for telling my secret. Adam and Wael said sorry for making fun of me. We're all friends again!"



في أحد الأيام، كان تامر حزينًا عندما عاد من المدرسة. «ما الأمر؟» سألت والدته. قال تامر: «شريف سألني لماذا لا أريد المشاركة في مسابقة السباحة. أخبرته أنني أخاف من الماء، لكن ذلك كان سرًا. لقد أخبر آدم ووائل، والآن الجميع يعرفون. إنهم يسخرون مني.» قالت والدته تامر: «لم يكن ذلك لطيفًا من شريف.» في اليوم التالي، كان تامر أكثر سعادة بكثير سألت والدته «كيف كانت المدرسة اليوم، يا تامر؟» قال تامر مبتسمًا: «كانت أفضل! شريف اعتذر لأنه أفشى سري. وآدم ووائل قالوا آسفين لأنهما سخرا مني. عدنا أصدقاء من جديد!»

Help your child to be a good friend.

ساعد طفلك أن يكون صديقًا صالحًا.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sorry - support - rumors - listen - fun

القاهرة 2025

To be a good friend, you should 1) to your friend's idea. Never make 2) of your friends, you should also 3) your friend and say 4) if you make something wrong.

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tamer came home from school feeling sad. His mom asked him what was wrong, and he explained that he had told his friend Sherif a secret — that he was afraid of water and didn't want to join the swimming competition. However, Sherif shared the secret with others, and they started making fun of Tamer. His mom told him that what Sherif did was not kind. The next day, Tamer was much happier because Sherif apologized for revealing his secret, and Adam and Wael also apologized for making fun of him. They all became friends again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

- 1) Tamer was sad because his was shared.
a) book b) bag c) secret
- 2) Sherif to Tamer the next day.
a) shouted b) apologized c) played

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Who did Tamer tell his secret to?
- 4) What was Tamer afraid of?.....
- 5) How did Tamer feel after his friends apologized?.....
- 6) What did Tamer's mom say about Sherif's action?.....

Lesson (6)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- 1) You make fun of your friends. أسويط 2025
a) shouldn't b) do c) isn't
- 2) Never your friend's secrets to other people.
a) tell b) eat c) listen
- 3) Listen your friend's ideas.
a) at b) of c) to
- 4) It's good to your friend.
a) support b) spread c) pressure
- 5) Never spread about your friends.
a) fun b) rumors c) fan
- 6) If you make your friend sad, sorry.
a) say b) tell c) do
- 7) Never your friend to do something he doesn't want to do.
a) have b) tell c) pressure

4 Read, order and write.

1) your - ideas - Listen - friend's - to - .

2) friend - Never - your - pressure - .

3) was - the - How - today - school - ?

5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements.

A good friend

(tell - secrets - rumors - listen)

Lesson (7)

Learn Phonics With Busy Bee!



Phonics

Listen and repeat.

Soft (c) sounds like /s/: if the letter (c) is followed by (e, i, y) it makes the sound /s/.
ينطق حرف (c) مثل /s/ إذا جاء بعده الحروف (e, i, y).



race

سباق / يتسابق



distance

مسافة



city

مدينة



citadel

القلعة



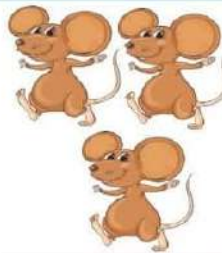
ice

ثلج



space

الفضاء



mice

فئران



policeman

رجل الشرطة



face

وجه



bicycle

دراجة



pencil

قلم رصاص



rice

أرز

Lesson (7)

Hard "c" sounds like /k/: if the letter (c) isn't followed by (e - i - y) or at the end of the word, it makes the /k/ sound.

ينطق حرف (c) مثل /k/ مع باقي الحروف وعندما يكون في نهاية الكلمة.



carrot

جزرة



camel

جمل



cookie

كعكة محلاة



camera

كاميرا



plastic

بلاستيك



cake

كعكة / تورتة



coffee

قهوة



cold

بارد



music

موسيقى



computer

كمبيوتر



color

يلون / لون



crocodile

تمساح



club

نادي

Look and read.

We raced to the city on our bicycles.

We saw the citadel and ate

ice cream!



Help your child identify the hard (c) that sounds like /k/.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على حرف (c) الذي ينطق /k/.

General Activities

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

- | | | |
|----------|------------|------------|
| 1) i_e | 2) _ookie | 3) pen_il |
| 4) ra_e | 5) bicy_le | 6) _arrot |
| 7) _amel | 8) musi_ | 9) plasti_ |
| 10) mi_e | 11) _old | 12) fa_e |

2 Read, order and write.

1) the city - We - raced to - bicycles - on - our - .

2) saw - the - They - citadel - .

3) the - citadel - It's - a short - to - distance - .

3 Read, sort and write.

carrot - plastic - race - cold - face - pencil - cake -
crocodile - ice - space

(c) sounds like /s/	(c) sounds like /k/

Lesson (8)

CLIL: Math:

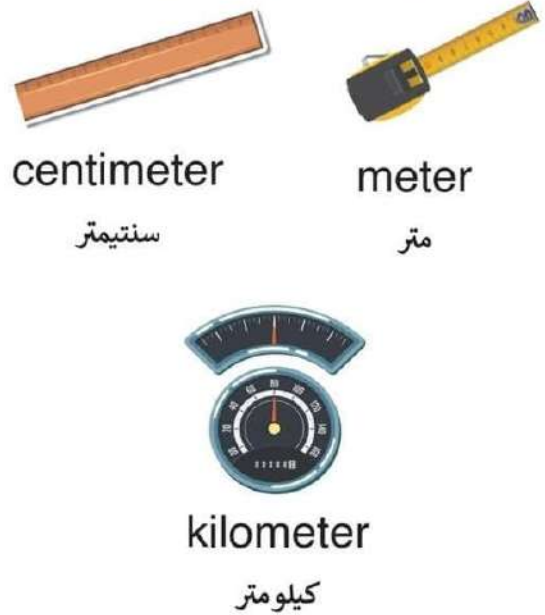
Units of measurement

Units of measurement

Time



Distance



Units of measurement from small to large:

وحدات القياس من الأصغر إلى الأكبر



Time

seconds

minutes

hours



Distance

centimeters

meters

kilometers

Extra vocabulary

graph

رسم بياني

increase

يزداد

decrease

يقل

Help your child identify units of measurement for time and distance.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على وحدات القياس الخاصة بالوقت والمسافة.

Look at the line graph. Then choose.

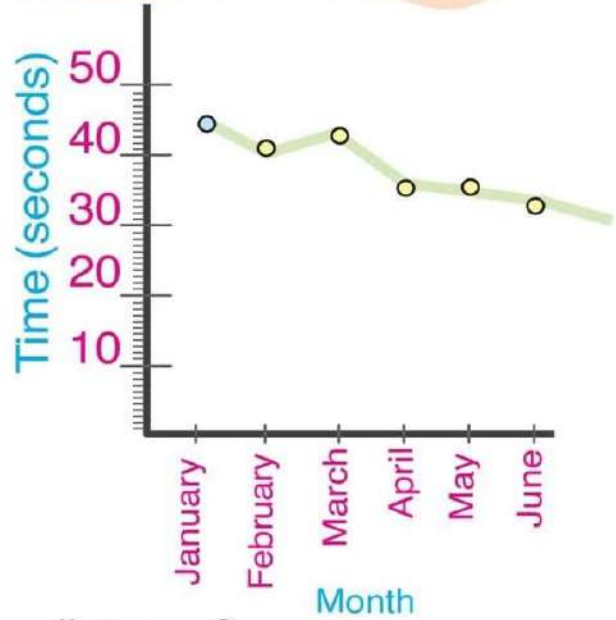
Aya started training for a running competition in January. It's July now. Look at the graph of her fastest times each month.

بدأت آية التدريب لمسابقة الجري في شهر يناير. إنه شهر يوليو الآن. انظر إلى الرسم البياني لأسرع المرات لها في كل شهر.



Aya's fastest 200 - meter times

Month	Time
January	45 seconds
February	41 seconds
March	43 seconds
April	36 seconds
May	35 seconds
June	33 seconds



1) Does the graph measure time or distance?

(time - distance)

2) What was Aya's fastest time in January?

(35 seconds - 45 seconds)

3) What was her fastest time in June?

(41 seconds - 33 seconds)

4) Is Aya getting faster or slower?

(slower - faster)

5) What happens to the line on the graph?

(decreases - increases)

Lesson (9)

CLIL: Social Studies: World records

Listen and say.



team

فريق



famous

مشهور



map

خريطة



score

يسجل هدف



goal

مرمى / هدف



cyclist

راكب دراجة



heart

قلب



shape

شكل



footballer

لاعب كرة قدم

Extra vocabulary

direction	اتجاه	journey	رحلة
break	يكسر / يحطم	season	فصل / موسم
Egypt's national football team			منتخب مصر لكرة القدم
set a world record			يسجل رقم قياسي عالمي
Africa Cup of Nations			كأس الأمم الأفريقية
GPS			نظام المواقع العالمي
challenge			تحدي

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
challenge يتحدى	challenged	set يسجل	set
happen يحدث	happened	break يكسر	broke
cycle يركب دراجة	cycled	get يحصل على	got

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

World records

What is a **world record**?

It's something which is the fastest, biggest, oldest, or smallest in the world. People in many different countries like trying to make new world records all the time. Here are some **famous Egyptian** world records.

ما هو الرقم القياسي العالمي؟

إنه شيء ما يكون الأسرع، الأكبر، الأقدم أو الأصغر في العالم. يحب الناس في العديد من البلدان المختلفة محاولة تسجيل أرقام قياسية عالمية جديدة طوال الوقت. فيما يلي بعض الأرقام القياسية المصرية المشهورة.

Did you know ... ?

In 2017/2018, the Egyptian **footballer** Mohamed Salah set a world record when he played for the English **team**, Liverpool. He **scored** the highest number of **goals** in one **season** - 32 goals!



Egypt's national football team has a world record too. It is for winning the **Africa Cup of Nations** the most times. It won seven times, in 1957, 1959, 1986, 1998, 2006, 2008 and 2010!

هل تعلم ... ؟

في عام 2017 / 2018، سجل لاعب كرة القدم المصري محمد صلاح رقمًا قياسيًّا عالميًّا عندما لعب مع فريق ليفربول الإنجليزي.

قام بتسجيل أكبر عدد من الأهداف في موسم واحد - 32 هدف!

منتخب مصر لكرة القدم لديه رقم قياسي عالمي أيضًا. لفوزه بكأس الأمم الأفريقية

أكثر عدد من المرات. فاز سبع مرات في أعوام 1957، 1959، 1986، 1998،

2006، 2008 و 2010!



Lesson (9)

And in 2018, **cyclists** in Egypt made a new world record. They made the largest **GPS** drawing by bicycle! The **challenge** was to cycle 761 km around Egypt, and record the **direction** of the race. The cyclists started at the Great Pyramids of Giza, and it took three days to finish.

في عام 2018، حقق راكبي الدراجات في مصر رقمًا قياسيًا عالميًا جديدًا. لقد صنعوا أكبر رسم على نظام تحديد المواقع بالدراجة! كان التحدي يتمثل في ركوب دراجة لمسافة 761 كم حول مصر وتسجيل اتجاه السباق. بدأ راكبي الدراجات من أهرامات الجيزة، واستغرق الأمر ثلاثة أيام للانتهاء منه.

The picture of their **journey** made the shape of a **heart** on the map! It was important because it made people think about how **important** it is to keep your heart healthy.

صنعت صورة رحلتهم شكل قلب على الخريطة! كان مهمًا لأنه جعل الناس يفكرون في مدى أهمية الحفاظ على صحة قلبك.

It isn't just Egyptian people who break world records. The Egyptian Mau is the fastest cat in the world. It can run up to 48 kilometers an hour!

ليس فقط المصريون هم الذين حطموا الرقم القياسي العالمي. القط المصري (ماو) هو أسرع قط في العالم. يمكن أن تصل سرعته إلى 48 كيلو متر في الساعة!

Read again and answer.

1) In which sport did Mohamed Salah set a world record?

2) How many goals did he score in one season?

3) When did cyclists in Egypt set a record for cycling around Egypt?

4) How far did they cycle?

5) Where did the race start?

6) How long did it take to finish?

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Egypt - team - footballer - record - goals

Mohamed Salah is an Egyptian 1) He is clever. He set a new world 2) He scored the highest numbers of 3) He plays for the national 4) He plays for the English team, Liverpool, too. He loves Egypt.

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

What is a world record? It's something which is the fastest, biggest, oldest or smallest in the world. People in many different countries like trying to make new world records all the time. Here are some famous Egyptian world records. One of these is Mohamed Salah. In 2017/2018, the Egyptian footballer Mohamed Salah set a world record when he played for the English team Liverpool. He scored the highest number of goals in one season - 32 goals!

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b or c.

- 1) Mohamed Salah plays for a/an team.
a) Egyptian b) English c) French
- 2) In 2017/2018 Mohamed Salah scored goals in one season.
a) 32 b) 13 c) 23

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What is a world record?
- 4) In which sport did Mohamed Salah set a world record?
- 5) How many goals did Mohamed Salah score in one season?
- 6) Who is Mohamed Salah?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- 1) Mohamed Salah a world record in 2017/2018.
a) set b) finished c) scored
- 2) Mohamed Salah is a
a) singer b) dentist c) footballer
- 3) A footballer scores
a) balls b) goals c) feet
- 4) The Great Pyramids of Giza are
a) short b) famous c) small

4 Read, order and write.

1) Liverpool - Mohamed Salah - for - plays - .

2) is - What - record - a world - ?

3) of - the shape - Cyclists - made - a heart - .

4) far - How - they - did - cycle - ?

5 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements.

Mohamed Salah

(famous footballer - set - Liverpool)

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	سباق	.....	مضمار السباق
.....	لاعب رياضي	.....	حدث رياضي
.....	يتنافس	.....	يقيس
.....	يرمي	.....	مسابقة

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	يقوم بعملية الاحماء	.....	يسانّد صديق
.....	معًا	.....	يبذل جهد أكبر
.....	يأتي في المركز الثاني	.....	غداء / متسابق
.....	يسجل	.....	ينتهي

Lesson (6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	ينشر شائعات	.....	يفشي الأسرار
.....	يمرح	.....	يستمتع
.....	يعتذر	.....	يضغط
.....	يسخر من	.....	يدعم

Lesson (7)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	مسافة	.....	جمل
.....	مدينة	.....	جزرة
.....	قلعة	.....	قهوة
.....	فئران	.....	بارد

Lessons (8 & 9)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
.....	ثواني	.....	مشهور
.....	ساعات	.....	فريق
.....	سنتيمتر	.....	قلب
.....	متر	.....	يسجل هدف

Writing Corner

A sports event

I'm at a sports event today. Some athletes are jumping. I hope Heba wins today! She can jump really high! It's exciting. I think the athlete wearing red will win.

Why is Hend training?

Hend is a good girl. She likes jumping. She goes to the track four times a week. She eats healthy food. She has a big competition in jumping next month, so she is training very hard. I think she will win a medal!

How to be a good friend

To be a good friend, you should listen to your friend's ideas. It isn't kind to laugh at people. You should also support your friend and say sorry if you make something wrong.

My favorite footballer

My favorite footballer is Mohamed Salah. He is an Egyptian footballer. He plays for Liverpool. He is clever. He set a new world record. He scored a lot of goals.

Review On Unit (1)

Vocabulary

sports event	حدث رياضي	athlete	لاعب رياضي	team	فريق
medal	ميدالية	competition	مسابقة	jump	يقفز
race	سباق	track	مضمار السباق	win	يفوز
spread rumors	ينشر شائعات	fit	لائق بدنياً	runner	عداء
high	عالٍ / مرتفع	measure	يقيس	slow	بطيء
centimeter	سنتيمتر	listen	يستمع	far	بعيد
support	يدعم / يساند	have fun	يمرح	difficult	صعب
make fun of	يسخر من	tell secrets	يفشي الأسرار	fast	سريع
snack	وجبة خفيفة	tired	متعب	throw	يرمي

Phonics

Soft "c"/s/

race	سباق	citadel	قلعة	mice	فئران
distance	مسافة	ice	ثلج	face	وجه
sports center	مركز رياضي	space	فضاء	pencil	قلم رصاص
rice	أرز	policeman	رجل شرطة	city	مدينة

Hard "c"/k/

cake	كعكة / تورتة	coffee	قهوة	cookie	كعكة محلاة
camel	جمل	carrot	جزرة	camera	كاميرا
plastic	بلاستيك	music	موسيقى	cold	بارد



Language

The Future Simple زمن المستقبل البسيط

Form

Subject (فاعل) + **will** + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) + (باقي الجملة)

- Hana **will win** the competition.
- She **'ll be** happy.

Negative

Subject (فاعل) + **will not (won't)** + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) + (باقي الجملة)

- It **won't be** easy to win today.

(Yes / No) question

Will + **subject** (فاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) ?

- **Will** it **be** a good competition? - **Yes**, it **will**.
- **No**, it **won't**.

Wh- question

Question word + **will** + **subject** (فاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) ?

- **When will** the event **be**? - It will be **tomorrow**.

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative صيغة المقارنة

Short adj. (صفة قصيرة) + **er** + **than**

- Hana is **faster than** Sara.
- Hana runs **faster than** Sara.

Superlative صيغة التفضيل

the + **short adj.** (صفة قصيرة) + **est**

- Ahmed is **the fastest** boy.
- Ahmed runs **the fastest**.

Exam On Unit (1)

1 Listen and write the missing sounds.

- 1) _ookie
- 2) spa_e
- 3) _old
- 4) ri_e

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

athletes - throwing - event - black - which

الجيزة 2025

We're at the track. There is a big sports 1) Lots of
2) are competing. They are wearing red, green, blue and
3) They are competing in running, jumping and 4)

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Today we are at the track. There are many athletes. Noha is the fastest. Mohamed likes jumping. He can jump very high. Mona likes throwing.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

الشرقية - العاشر 2025

- 1) There are many at the track.
a) doctors b) teachers c) athletes
- 2) Mohamed can very high.
a) eat b) jump c) throw

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Where are you today?
- 4) Who is the fastest?
- 5) What does Mohamed like?
- 6) What does Mona like?

Exam on Unit (1)

4 The Reader

A Read and match.

- 1) Fares and his family a) pool every day.
- 2) Fares trained in the b) lived close to the sports center.

B Read and write T(True) or F (False).

- 3) Fares loved swimming. (.....)
- 4) Fares sometimes cycled to the pool. (.....)

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c.

- 1) I will to school tomorrow. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2025
a) going b) go c) goes
- 2) Rana ran than Noha. الشرقية - العاشر 2025
a) fast b) faster c) fastest
- 3) He in the national team. الشرقية - العاشر 2025
a) plays b) play c) playing
- 4) He doesn't like swimming he is scared of water.
a) and b) but c) because

6 Read, order and write.

- 1) ran - the - Who - fastest - ?

- 2) don't - I - like - running - jumping - or - .

7 Write a paragraph of about (20 words) 3-4 sentences using guiding elements.

World records

أسبوط 2025

(Mohamed Salah - goals - set)

Unit 2

Body matters

وظائف الجسم



Scope and Sequence:

Vocabulary

المفردات الثموية

Human biology: absorb arteries beat blood bone brain break down
chew elbow heart jaw knee lungs organ oxygen muscle nutrients
pump rib saliva skeleton skull swallow tongue veins
Physical protection: helmet knee pads etc

Language

اللغة

- I'm going to wear a helmet
- He isn't going to go to the park today
- Is she going to climb the rock? - Yes, she is.

Reading

القراءة

- A text about bones; a website about digestion

Phonics

الصوتيات

Long (oo): mood food

Short (oo): book cook

Life skills

المهارات الحياتية

- Self-management: Personal protection

Values

القيم

- Appreciation of science

- Cooperation

Issues and challenges

القضايا والتحديات

- Preventative health
- Therapeutic health: healthy and unhealthy lifestyles

Integrated cross-curriculum topics

التكامل بين موضوعات المنهج

- Science: digestion, sunscreen and taking care in the sun

Vocabulary

Listening and reading

Listen and say.



brain
المخ



skull
جمجمة



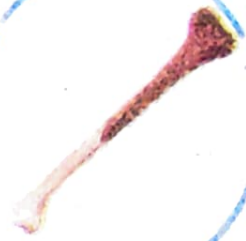
rib
ضلع



jaw
الفك



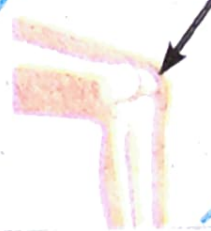
Skeleton
الهيكل العظمي



bone
عظمة



muscle
عضلة



knee
ركبة



elbow
مرفق (كوع)



heart
القلب



lungs
الرئتان



veins
الأوردة



arteries
الشرايين

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Definitions

arteries

These carry blood with oxygen in it away from the heart.

الشرايين

veins

These carry blood without a lot of oxygen in it to the heart.

الأوردة

oxygen

A gas which all living organisms need.

الأكسجين

blood

A liquid that carries oxygen and nutrients around your body.

الدم

blood vessels

Tubes through which blood circulates in the body. (veins and arteries)

الأوعية الدموية

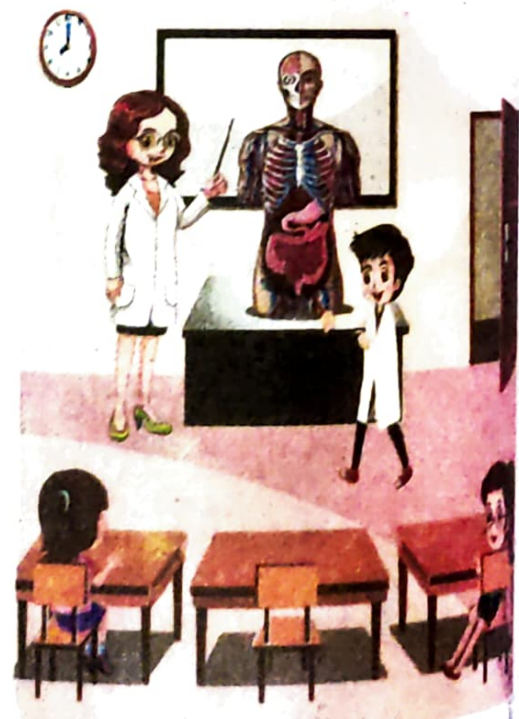
nutrients

We need these to help us grow.

مغذيات غذائية

Look and read.

Today we're going to learn about the body. Miss Mona is going to tell us how the heart works. Did you know your heart beats about 70 times a minute? Your heart moves blood around your body. Our brain controls everything that happens in our body. Our skeleton helps us move and makes us strong. It's very interesting!



اليوم سوف نتعلم عن الجسم. سوف نخبرنا الأستاذة منى كيف يعمل القلب. هل تعلم أن قلبك ينبض ٧٠ مرة في الدقيقة؟ ينقل قلبك الدم حول جسمك. يتحكم المخ في كل شيء يحدث في جسمنا. يساعدنا هيكلنا العظمي على الحركة. جعلنا أقوىاء. هذا مثير جداً.

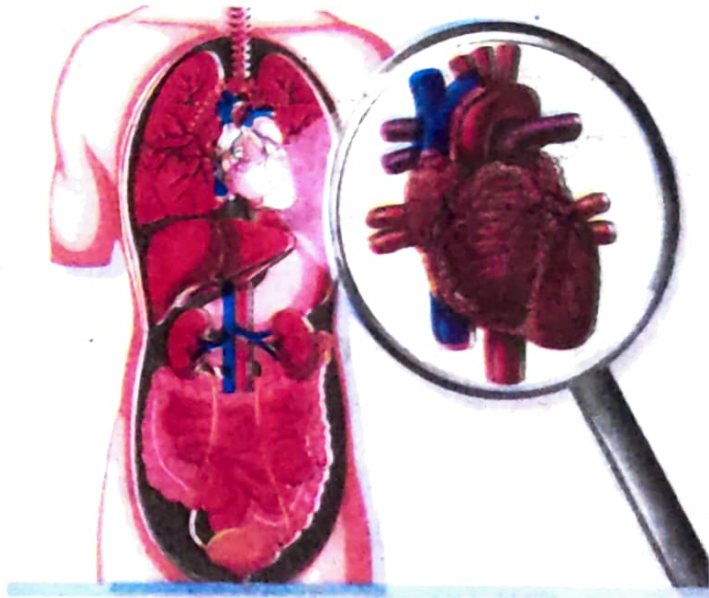
Look and read.

The heart is very important because it moves blood around your body. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body.

القلب مهم جدًا لأنه ينقل الدم حول جسمك. يحمل الأكسجين والعناصر الغذائية إلى جميع أجزاء الجسم.

Veins carry blood from the body to the heart. There isn't a lot of oxygen left in this blood because it was used in the body. That is why the blood looks darker.

تحمل الأوردة الدموية الدم من الجسم إلى القلب. لا يتبقى الكثير من الأكسجين في الدم لأنه تم استخدامه في الجسم. لذلك يبدو الدم داكن اللون (أغمق).



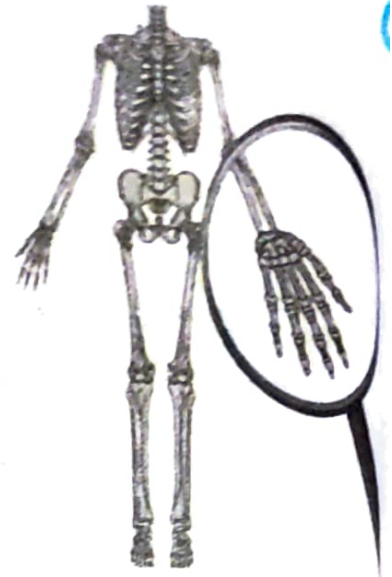
The heart pushes this blood to the lungs. In the lungs, oxygen is added to the blood. The oxygenated blood (now with oxygen in it) travels back to the heart and then the heart pumps it out to the rest of the body in the arteries. Veins and arteries are the major blood vessels that connect to the heart.

يدفع القلب الدم إلى الرئتين. في الرئتين، يضاف الأكسجين إلى الدم. يعود الدم المؤكسد (الذي يحتوي الآن على الأكسجين) إلى القلب ثم يضخه القلب إلى باقي الجسم في الشرايين. الأوردة والشرايين هي الأوعية الدموية الرئيسية التي تتصل بالقلب.

Bones and muscles

Our **skeleton** is all the bones that keep us strong and help us move. We need **muscles** to move our **bones**. Muscles are attached to bones and they lift and turn bones so we can walk, run, dance - anything!

هيكلنا العظمي هو كل العظام التي نبقينا قويا وتساعدنا على الحركة. نحتاج إلى العضلات لنحرك عظامنا. العضلات متصلة بالعظام ونجعلها ترتفع وتلف لذلك نتمكن من المشي والجري والرقص وكل شيء!



When we kick a ball, muscles make the bones in our leg and **knee** move.

Muscles in our arms and **elbows** move when you play tennis. We use muscles when we chew food, to move the **jaw bone** up and down. Bones are hard, and they protect our soft organs. Our **brain**, **heart** and **lungs** are important organs that need to be safe.

عندما نركل الكرة، تجعل العضلات العظام في الساق والركبة تتحرك. تتحرك العضلات في أذرعنا وفي المرفقين عندما نلعب التنس. نحن نستخدم العضلات عند مضغ الطعام لتحريك عظمة الفك لأعلى ولأسفل. العظام صلبة وتحمي أعضائنا الرخوة. مخنا وقلبنا وورثتنا أعضاء مهمة يجب أن تكون آمنة.



- 1- There are **206 bones** in a **skeleton**.
- 2- **Muscles** are **soft**.
- 3- **Bones** are **hard**.
- 4- Our **skull** protects our **brain**.
- 5- Our **ribs** protect our **heart**.

٢٠٦ عظمة في الهيكل العظمي.
ليست رخوة.
صلبة.
الجمجمة مخنا.
الضلوع قلبنا.



Activities

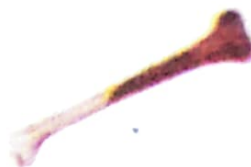
1 Look and complete.



h _ a _ t



sk _ let _ n



b _ n _



m _ sc _ e



sk _ l _



l _ n _ s



ar _ er _ es



br _ _ n

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

k _ s l
u _ l



s g _
u n



b l _ e
o w



d _ b o
o _ l



w _ j
a



k _ e
n _ e



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 Our (heart - skull - brain) beats about 70 times a minute.
- 2 Our (skull - brain - elbow) controls everything that happens in our body.
- 3 Our (jaw - lungs - skeleton) helps us move and makes us strong.
- 4 The heart moves (blood - water - milk) around your body.
- 5 Blood carries (veins - oxygen - ice) to all parts of the body.
- 6 (Veins - Lungs - Muscles) carry blood from the body to the heart.
- 7 In the (skull - lungs - heart), oxygen is added to the blood.
- 8 Veins and arteries are blood (muscles - vessels - nutrients).
- 9 We need (lungs - eyes - muscles) to move our bones.
- 10 Bones are (soft - hard - easy) and they protect our soft organs.
- 11 Blood is a (gas - liquid - solid).
- 12 Oxygen is a (gas - liquid - solid).
- 13 Veins carry blood (to - with - without) oxygen to the heart.
- 14 Our (ribs - lungs - jaws) protect our heart.
- 15 Our (knee - elbow - jaw) is a bone in our face.
- 16 There are 206 bones in a (skeleton - jaw - skull).
- 17 (Arteries - Veins - Lungs) carry blood with oxygen.
- 18 We use (knees - muscles - heart) when we chew food.
- 19 Muscles are (hard - safe - soft).
- 20 Muscles are attached to the (bones - lungs - heart).

4 Read and match.

- | | | |
|----------------------|---|---|
| 1 oxygen | a) are the major blood vessels. | 4 |
| 2 nutrients | b) a gas which all living organisms need | |
| 3 Veins | c) We need these to help us grow. | |
| 4 Veins and arteries | d) carry blood without oxygen to the heart. | |

5 | Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

Lessons (1 & 2)

1 skeleton - us - Our - move - helps - .

2 important - is - The heart - very - .

6 | Read the passage then answer the questions.

The heart is very important because it moves blood around your body . Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body . Veins carry blood from the body to the heart. There isn't a lot of oxygen left in this blood because it was used in the body. That is why the blood looks darker. The heart pushes this blood to the lungs. In the lungs, oxygen is added to the blood.

1) Choose the correct answer.

2) (Nutrients - Veins - Lungs) carry blood from the body to the heart.

3) In the lungs, (oxygen - air - water) is added to the blood.

4) Answer the following questions.

5) Why is the heart very important?

What carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body?

7 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



heart - important

2



Bones - hard

8 Fill in the spaces with:

Arteries - Blood - blood vessels - nutrients - Veins

- 1 carry blood from the body to the heart
- 2 carries oxygen and nutrients around your body
- 3 We need to help our bodies grow
- 4 carry blood away from the heart to the body
- 5 Veins and arteries are types of

9 Complete the following dialogue with:

What - reading - morning - skeleton

- Omar : Good morning, Hana.
- Hana : Good (1), Omar
- Omar : (2) are you doing
- Hana : I'm (3) a book
- Omar : What is it about?
- Hana : It's about the (4)

Lesson
(3)

Language use

Listen and say.



rock

صخرة



sunglasses

نظارة شمس



helmet

خوذة



wear

يرتدي



knee pads

(حافضة / وافي) للركبة



mountains

جبل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Future with "going to" زمن المستقبل باستخدام "going to"

Usage

We use "be going to" to talk about things we intend to do.

نستخدم be going to عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي ننوي فعلها.

Form

I

+ am

He / She / It / Singular noun + is + going to + inf.

We / You / They / Plural noun + are

e.g. I am going to wear a helmet.



e.g. She is going to go to bed early.



e.g. We are going to drink water.



Keywords

tomorrow غدا today

اليوم

this (evening,

tonight الليلة after (school,...) (بعد المدرسة...)

(المساء...)

e.g. He is going to ride a horse tomorrow.



Negative

Lesson (3)

am not

+

is not / isn't

+ going to + inf. ...

are not / aren't

+

e.g. He isn't going to wear pads.

e.g. I'm not going to wear sunglasses.

(Yes / No) question

Is + he / she / it / singular noun

Are + we / you / they / plural noun + going to + inf. ...?

- Is she going to wear a helmet?



- Yes, she is.



- Are they going to go to bed?



- No, they aren't.



Wh-question

What + is he / she / it / singular noun

+ going to + inf. ?

are we / you / they / plural noun

e.g. What are you going to do today?

I'm going to go to the park after school.



Help your child identify the future with "going to".
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على المستقبل باستخدام "going to".

Unit (2)

Look and read.

He is going to wear a helmet when he rides a horse.
سوف يرتدي خوذة عندما يركب حصان.



She is going to wear pads to protect her elbows.
سوف ترتدي وسادات واقية لتحمي مرفقيها.



I am going to wear sunglasses to protect my eyes from the sun.
سوف أرتدي نظارات شمسية لأحمي عيني من الشمس.



We are going to drink water after we go running.
سوف نشرب ماء بعد ذهابنا للجري.



She is going to go to bed early!
سوف تذهب للنوم مبكراً!



He's going to climb a rock.
سوف يتسلق صخرة.



Choose the correct word.

- 1 He's going to wear a helmet (tomorrow - yesterday - always).
- 2 I am (go - goes - going) to wear sunglasses to protect my eyes.
- 3 We are going to (drink - drinks - drinking) water after we go running.
- 4 She (am - is - are) going to go to bed early.
- 5 (We - I - She) is going to wear pads to protect her elbows.
- 6 (Am - Is - Are) they going to climb the mountain?



Activities

① Complete the following dialogue with:

time - ride - park - play

Hany : Where are you going, Hana?

Hana : To the (1)

Hany : Are you going to (2) a horse?

Hana : No, I'm going to (3) tennis.

Hany : Have a nice (4) !

Hana : Thank you.

② Choose the correct word.

① (Are - Is - Am) they going to drink water?

② I ('m - 's - 're) going to go to the park.

③ I'm going to (wears - wearing - wear) a helmet.

④ I'm (go - going - goes) to have chicken and rice for dinner.

⑤ Is (he - you - we) going to climb the mountain?

⑥ Are they going (too - two - to) go to the park?

⑦ We are going to (drinks - drinking - drink) water.

⑧ No, he (hasn't - doesn't - isn't) going to wear pads.

⑨ (Yes - Don't - Not), she is going to wear sunglasses.

⑩ He's going to climb a rock (yesterday - last week - tomorrow).

Unit (2)

3 Read and complete with the correct form.

- 1 I am going to (wears) a dress.
- 2 I (are) going to go to the library.
- 3 Ali is (go) to wear pads.
- 4 No, we (is) going to go to the zoo.

4 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 to - going - I'm - a helmet - wear - .

2 she - to - Is - going - pads - wear - ?

3 the park - He - going to - isn't - go to - .

5 Read and complete.

1 It's a school day. Is she going to go to bed early?

2 He's going to go swimming. Is he going to wear a helmet?

3 He's going to go the library. Is he going to wear pads?

6 Copy the following sentence.

I'm going to drink water.

Lessons
(4 & 5)

Life skills and values

Listening and writing



watch TV

يشاهد التلفاز



eat breakfast

يتناول الإفطار



drink water

يشرب الماء



skip breakfast

يفوت وجبة الإفطار



stay up late

يسهر لوقت متأخر



Life skills

مهارات حياتية



sleep

ينام



play outside

يلعب بالخارج



play video games

يلعب ألعاب الفيديو



running

الجري



cycling

ركوب الدراجات



eat fruit

تتناول الفاكهة

Help your child to be healthy.

ساعد طفلك أن يكون بصحة جيدة.

How healthy are you?

Do you ever skip breakfast?
هل سبق وأن تركت وجبة الإفطار؟

No, I always eat breakfast. It's my favorite meal.

لا، أنا دائماً أتناول وجبة الإفطار. إنها وجبتى المفضلة.



How much sleep do you get every night?
ما مقدار النوم الذى تحصلين عليه كل ليلة؟

I get nine or ten hours every night.
أنا أنام تسع أو عشر ساعات كل ليلة.



Do you play outside every day?
هل تلعبون بالخارج كل يوم؟

Yes, we love being outside.
نعم، نحب أن نكون بالخارج.



How often do you drink water?
كم مرة تشرب ماء؟

I drink about six cups a day.
أشرب حوالي ستة أكواب يومياً.



Which is healthier?



Drinking water is **healthier** than drinking cola.



Eating vegetables is **healthier** than eating fries.



Running is **healthier** than playing video games.



Cycling is **healthier** than watching TV.

Definitions

be calm

كن هادئاً

be positive

كن إيجابياً

stay up late

يسهر لوقت متأخر

have an argument

يجادل

be in a good mood

في حالة مزاجية جيدة

skip breakfast

يفوت وجبة الإفطار

relaxed, not angry

مسترخي / غير غاضب

try not to worry when facing a problem

يحاول ألا يقلق عند مواجهة مشكلة ما

not going to bed at the right time

لا ينام في الوقت المناسب

be cross with someone because you don't agree

تكون غاضباً من شخص ما لأنك لا تتفق معه

feeling happy and having fun

يشعر بالسعادة ويستمتع

not to eat breakfast in the morning

لا يأكل وجبة الإفطار في الصباح

Read and tick (✓) or cross (✗) the boxes.

Making healthy choices



Laila: I sometimes **stay up late** on a school night because I like watching TV and playing video games. In the morning, I feel **tired** and **cross**!

ليلي: أحيانًا أبقى مستيقظة لوقت متأخر ليلة المدرسة لأنني أحب مشاهدة التلفزيون ولعب ألعاب الفيديو. في الصباح أشعر بالتعب والغضب.



Adam: When I find things difficult at school, or I have **arguments** with my friends, I try to **stay positive**. I like taking a walk outside because it helps me feel happy and calm.

آدم: عندما أجد الأمور صعبة في المدرسة، أو يكون هناك نقاش مع أصدقائي، أحاول أن أبقى إيجابيًا. أحب التنزه في الخارج، لأنه يساعدني على الشعور بالسعادة والهدوء.



Dareen: I do exercise every day - I play football or go swimming. I like **cycling** too. I'm always in a good **mood** after I do exercise.

دارين: أنا أتدرب كل يوم. لعب كرة القدم أو أذهب للسباحة. أنا أحب ركوب الدراجة أيضًا. أنا دائمًا أكون في حالة مزاجية جيدة بعد التدريب.



Zain: I like fruit, but I eat a lot of sweet **snacks** too. Sometimes I feel tired, so I have **candy** and snacks. My mom says I don't get enough **nutrients**.

زين: أنا أحب الفاكهة، لكنني أتناول الكثير من الوجبات الخفيفة الحلوة أيضًا. أحيانًا أشعر بالتعب، لذا أتناول الحلوى والوجبات الخفيفة. تقول أمي أنني لا أحصل على ما يكفي من العناصر الغذائية.



Malak: I like school, but I sometimes worry because I **have arguments** with my friends. Then I feel angry and sad. I don't tell anyone. I play video games and try to forget about it.

ملك: أنا أحب المدرسة ولكن أحيانًا أشعر بالقلق لأنني ادخل في جدال مع أصدقائي. ثم أشعر بالغضب والحزن. أنا لا أخبر أي أحد. أعب ألعاب الفيديو وأحاول أن أنسى ذلك.

What can they change? Write your ideas.

Name

Idea

Laila

Zain

Malak

Help your child make healthy choices.

ساعد طفلك أن يتخذ الاختيارات الصحية.



Activities

1 Look and complete.



sl__p



e_t br__akf__st



c__cl__ng



v__deo g__mes



r__nn__ng



w__tch T__



dr__nk wa__er



__at fr__it

Look and tick (✓) the healthy choices.



Unit (2) - Body matters

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 Do you ever (watch - skip - drink) breakfast?
- 2 I sometimes (worry - stay - say) up late.
- 3 I prefer (trying - eating - watching) TV or playing video games.
- 4 I (make - do - have) exercise every day.
- 5 She is going to (sleep - watch - stay) early.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1 have an argument | a) relaxed, not angry |
| 2 stay up late | b) feeling happy and having fun |
| 3 be in a good mood | c) be cross with someone because you don't agree |
| 4 be positive | d) not going to bed at the right time |
| 5 be calm | e) try not to worry when facing a problem |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

5- ()

5 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



exercise- every day

2



feel- tired

6 Fill in the spaces with:

- skip breakfast - be positive - calm - an argument - stay up late
- 1 When I feel worried, I try to and think of nice things.
 - 2 I don't because the next day I feel tired and angry.
 - 3 I feel unhappy when I have with my friend.
 - 4 I get hungry and tired if I
 - 5 Wael doesn't shout when things go wrong. He is

7 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

- 1 you - skip - Do - ever - breakfast - ?
.....
- 2 do - drink - often - How - water - you - ?
.....
- 3 watching - Fares - sports - likes - .
.....
- 4 never - skip - I - break fast - .
.....

8 Copy the following sentence.

I never skip breakfast.

.....

.....

Phonics

Listen and repeat.

Long

oo /u:/

mood
حالة مزاجيةfood
طعامroot
جذرtool
أداةroom
حجرة

Short

oo /ʊ/

book
كتابcook
يطهو / يطبخwood
خشبgood
جيدfoot
قدم

Look and read.

Healthy food puts Fares in a good mood.



I'm in my room. I've got a book about the moon.



Listen. Underline the long (oo) sound. Circle the short (oo) sound.

① He's in a bad mood because he hurt his foot with a big book!



② Let's cook some food. We'll eat in the kitchen, not in the living room.



Help your child recognize and produce the oo sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على صوت oo وينطقه.

Vocabulary

organ	عضو	protect	يحمي
brain	المخ	layer	طبقة
lungs	الرئتان	attach	يربط
dirt	فاذورات	sunburn	حروق الشمس
germs	جراثيم	damage	بضر / يتلف

Listen and read.

1 Do you know what the largest organ in our body is?

هل تعرفون ما أكبر عضو في جسمنا؟



2 Is it our lungs? They're big!

هل هو الرئتان؟ إنهما كبيرتان!



3 Is it our brain?
هل هو مخنا؟

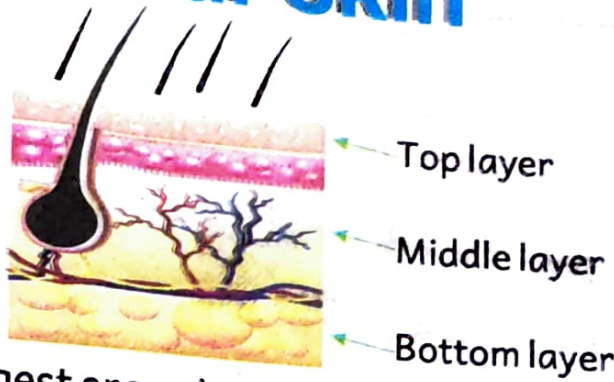
4 No, it's our skin!
لا، إنه جلدنا!



5 Our skin? Wow!
جلدنا؟ واو!



Our skin



Top layer

Middle layer

Bottom layer

Our skin is the largest organ in our body, and it's very important. It protects us from the sun, as well as from dirt and germs. It keeps you cool in hot weather, and warm in cold weather! We need to look after our skin to keep it healthy. Our skin has got lots of layers.

جلدنا هو العضو الأكبر في جسدنا، وهو مهم للغاية. يحمينا من الشمس وأيضاً يحمينا من القاذورات والجراثيم. إنه يحافظ على برودة جسمك في الطقس الحار وعلى دفئك في الطقس البارد! نحن بحاجة إلى أن نعتني ببشرتنا لتبقى صحية. جلدنا له العديد من الطبقات.

1) Top layer



This is strong. Water can't get through it!

الطبقة العليا: هذه طبقة قوية، لا يمكن للماء أن يمر عبرها.

2) Middle layer



We can feel hot and cold things here. This has got blood vessels.

الطبقة الوسطى: يمكننا الشعور بالحرارة والبرودة هنا. هذه الطبقة بها الأوعية الدموية.

3) Bottom layer



This attaches your skin to your bones and muscles.

الطبقة السفلى: تربط جلدك بعظامك وعضلاتك.

The sun can damage our skin. We can get sunburn. It's important to wear sunscreen to protect our skin.

Do you wear sunscreen?



يمكن للشمس أن تلحق الضرر ببشرتنا. يمكن أن نصاب بحروق الشمس. من المهم وضع كريم واقٍ من أشعة الشمس لحماية بشرتنا. هل تضع كريم واقٍ من أشعة الشمس؟



Activities

1 Look and complete.



f _ _ d



c _ _ k



w _ _ d



r _ _ m

2 Look and complete with:

food - book - mood

1 He reads a _____ about the moon.



2 She eats healthy _____.



3 She is in a bad _____.



3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 The top (food - layer - moon) of the skin is strong.
- 2 We can (feel - get - keep) hot and cold things through the middle layer of the skin.
- 3 The sun can (attach - keep - damage) our skin.
- 4 It's important to wear (sunglasses - sunscreen - sunburn) to protect our skin.
- 5 Our skin keeps us (fat - cool - hot) in hot weather.
- 6 We have got (blood vessels - water - lungs) in the middle layer of skin.
- 7 We can get (sunscreen - sunburn - layer) from the sun.

4 Read and match.

Lessons (6 & 7)

- 1 Our skin is
 - 2 Water can't get through
 - 3 Do you wear sunscreen?
 - 4 The middle layer of the skin
- a) Yes, I do.
 - b) has got blood vessels.
 - c) the largest organ in our body.
 - d) the top layer of the skin.
- 1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

5 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 got - about - I've - the moon - a book - .

2 some - Let's - food - cook - .

3 get - can - from - We - the sun - sunburn - .

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



wear - sunscreen

2



healthy - food

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (2)

7 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Our skin is the largest organ in our body, and it's very important. It protects us from the sun, as well as from dirt and germs. It keeps you cool in hot weather, and warm in cold weather. We need to look after our skin to keep it healthy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Your skin keeps you (cold - hot - cool) in hot weather.
- 2 We need to (damage - look after - attach) our skin.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What is the largest organ in our body?

- 4 What does our skin protect us from?

8 Fill in the spaces with:

Water - attaches - important - layers

- 1 Our skin has got lots of
- 2 It's to wear sunscreen.
- 3 can't get through our top layer of skin.
- 4 The bottom layer your skin to your bones and muscles.

Lessons (8 & 9)

CLIL: Science: Digestion

Listen and say.



teeth
الأسنان



mouth
الفم



tongue
اللسان



stomach
المعدة



Parts of the body

أجزاء الجسم



jaw
الفك

Vocabulary

break down

يحلل chew

يمضغ saliva

اللعاب

stomach acid

حمض المعدة swallow

يبتلع absorb

يمتص

get rid of

يتخلص من

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

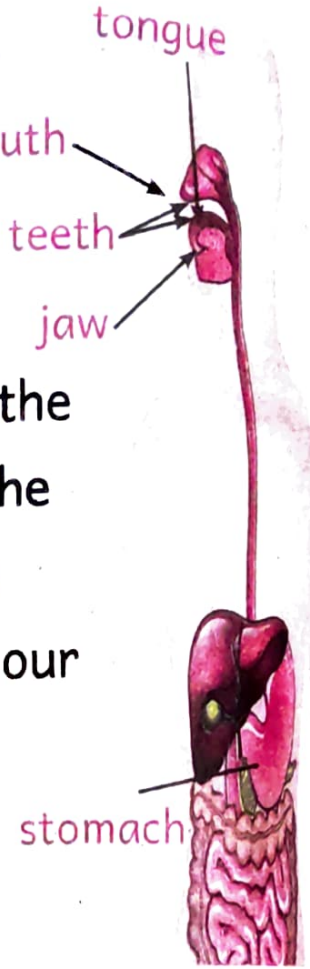
عملية الهضم Digestion

We know it's important to eat healthy food.
But do you know what happens to food after you eat it?

نحن نعلم أنه من المهم تناول الطعام الصحي. ولكن هل تعرف ماذا يحدث للطعام بعد أن نأكله؟

When we **swallow** food, it goes to our **stomach**. We get energy and **nutrients** from the food we eat. But our bodies have to change the food so it can use it. It has to **break down** the food before it can absorb it. We chew food in our mouths, using our teeth, tongue and jaw.

عندما نبتلع الطعام، يذهب للمعدة. نحصل على الطاقة والعناصر الغذائية من الطعام الذي نأكله. ولكن أجسامنا يجب أن تغير الطعام حتى تتمكن من استخدامه. يجب أن يحلل جسمنا الطعام قبل أن يتمكن من إمتصاصه. نمضغ الطعام في أفواهنا، مستخدمين أسناننا، لساننا وفكيننا.



We need **saliva** to help us do this. This is a liquid made in our mouth. Then we swallow the food. **Muscles** help to push it down to our stomach. When the food is in our stomach, another special liquid called "**stomach acid**" breaks down the food. This is called digestion.

مناج اللعاب ليساعدنا في فعل ذلك. اللعاب سائل يتكون في أفواهنا، ثم نبتلع الطعام. تساعد العضلات في دفع الطعام لأسفل إلى معدتنا. عندما يصبح الطعام في معدتنا، هناك سائل آخر خاص يسمى «حمض المعدة» يعمل على تحليل الطعام. هذه العملية تسمى «الهضم».

Now the body can **absorb** the nutrients it needs from the food and get rid of the things it doesn't need.

الآن يستطيع الجسم امتصاص العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها من الطعام ويتخلص من الأشياء التي لا يحتاجها.



Activities

1 Look and complete.



st_m_ch



to_gue



t_e_h



m_u_h

2 Choose the correct word.

- 1 First, we put food in our (stomach - mouth - teeth).
- 2 We make food smaller with our (saliva - tongue - teeth).
- 3 We (swallow - chew - absorb) food with our teeth.
- 4 We have a liquid called (tongue - stomach - saliva) in our mouth to help us chew food.
- 5 When our food is smaller, we can (swallow - absorb - chew) it.
- 6 When we eat, food goes to our (teeth - stomach - feet).
- 7 In the stomach, our body breaks (up - out - down) the food.
- 8 The body can (drink - swallow - absorb) the nutrients we need.

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 We make food smaller with our | a) down the food. |
| 2 We have a liquid in our mouth | b) to the stomach. |
| 3 Stomach acid breaks | c) teeth. |
| 4 When we swallow food, it goes | d) called saliva. |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (2)

4 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 chew - with - We - food - teeth - our - .

2 healthy - important - It's - eat - food - to - .

3 energy - the - We - get - from - food - .

5 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



saliva - chew



chew - food

6 Fill in the spaces with:

mouth - gets - swallow - stomach

1 When we _____ food, it goes to our stomach.

2 We chew food in our _____

3 The _____ acid breaks down the food.

4 The body _____ rid of the things it doesn't need.

7 Copy the following sentence.

It's important to eat healthy food.



Activities on Unit (2)

1 Look and complete.



h_a_t



sk_le_on



L_n_s



m_sc_e

2 Complete the following dialogue with:

skull - ride - going - wear

- Hana : What are you (1) to do?
 Hany : I'm going to (2) my bike.
 Hana : Are you going to (3) a helmet?
 Hany : Yes. It protects my (4)

3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 (Am - Is - Are) he going to ride a horse?
- 2 Our (teeth - lungs - skeleton) is all the bones that keep us strong.
- 3 I'm going to (wear - wears - wearing) a helmet.
- 4 Our (mouth - skin - heart) has got lots of layers.
- 5 We are (go - goes - going) to have chicken for lunch.

Unit (2)

4 Read and complete with the correct form.

- 1 (Are) he going to play football?
- 2 They (is) going to go to the zoo.
- 3 Is she going to go swimming? - No, she (is).
- 4 I (is) not going to go to school today.

5 Read and match.

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 oxygen | a) not going to bed at the right time |
| 2 blood vessels | b) a gas which all living organisms need |
| 3 be calm | c) veins and arteries |
| 4 stay up late | d) relaxed, not angry |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



going - a horse



heart - important

7 Read the passage then answer the questions.

We know it's important to eat healthy food. When we swallow food, it goes to our stomach. We get energy and nutrients from the food we eat. But our bodies have to change the food so it can use it. It has to break down the food before it can absorb it. We chew food in our mouths, using our teeth, tongue and jaw. We need saliva to help us do this. This is a liquid made in our mouth. Then we swallow the food. Muscles help to push it down to our stomach.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 It's important to eat (bad - unhealthy - healthy) food.
- 2 We chew food in our (mouths - saliva - stomach).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where does food go when we swallow it?
.....
- 4 What do we get from the food we eat?
.....

8 Copy the following sentence.

I eat breakfast every day.

.....

.....

.....

Unit (3)

What's on your plate

ماذا يوجد في طبقك؟



Scope and Sequence:

vocabulary	المفردات المعهية	A healthy diet plate: carbohydrate, dairy, fat, fiber, minerals, protein, sugar, vitamins Food packaging: calories, enough, percent, serving, sodium, too much
Language	اللغة	You should eat a healthy lunch every day. You shouldn't eat cookies every day.
Reading	القراءة	A leaflet about water; a text about preserving food; a text about sugar
Phonics	الصوتيات	-tion ending nutri... diges
Life skills	المهارات الحياتية	Decision-making: making healthy choices
Values	القيم	Independence
Issues and challenges	القضايا والتحديات	Therapeutic health: a healthy diet for a healthy mind
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	التكامل عبر موضوعات المنهج	Science: water and why we need it Math: decimal points; measuring ingredients

Lesson (1)

Vocabulary

Listen and say.

Nutrients

العناصر الغذائية

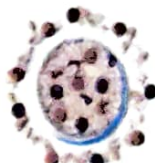
Protein
بروتين



eggs



chicken



cereal



rice

Carbohydrates
كربوهيدرات



fish



pasta



bread



vegetables



fruit



yogurt



cheese



milk



olive oil



sodium



butter

Fiber
الألياف
المغذيات والألياف

balance
diet

توازن calcium

نظام غذائي strong

الكالسيوم olive oil

قوى sugar

زيت زيتون

سكر

Help your child identify nutrients.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على العناصر الغذائية.

Unit (3)

Look, listen and read.

I always have fruit at breakfast - an apple or a banana. There are lots of **vitamins** in fruit, and there is **fiber**, too! Do you like fruit, Hany?

أتناول الفاكهة دائماً في وجبة الإفطار - تفاحة أو موزة، يوجد الكثير من الفيتامينات في الفاكهة، ويوجد بها ألياف أيضاً. هل تحب الفاكهة يا هاني؟

Yes, I do, but what are **vitamins**? Why do we need them?

نعم، ولكن ما هي الفيتامينات؟ ولماذا نحتاج إليها؟

Vitamins are **nutrients** in some foods. They're good for all parts of your body, and they make you strong! Mom says we should eat lots of fruit to get the vitamins we need.

الفيتامينات هي عناصر غذائية موجودة في بعض الأطعمة، وهي مفيدة لأعضاء جسمك كلها وتجعلك قوياً! تقول أمي ينبغي علينا تناول الكثير من الفاكهة للحصول على الفيتامينات التي نحتاج إليها.

That's good, because fruit is **delicious**! Are there vitamins in eggs?

هذا جيد، لأن الفاكهة لذيذة! هل توجد فيتامينات في البيض؟

Yes, there are!

نعم، يوجد.

Look and read.

It's important to get a **balance** of the right kinds of food. Our bodies need lots of different nutrients, including vitamins and **minerals**, to work well and be healthy. This healthy eating plate is a good way to think about what we need.

We should try to eat 5 - 7 pieces of **fruit** and **vegetables** a day. There are lots of vitamins in fruit, such as Vitamin C. There is also fiber. Fiber is very important in a healthy diet.

Carbohydrates give us energy. We can get these in bread, pasta, rice and cereal.

يجب علينا محاولة تناول من ٥ إلى ٧ قطع من الفاكهة والخضراوات يوميًا. يوجد الكثير من الفيتامينات في الفاكهة مثل فيتامين سي. يوجد أيضًا الألياف. الألياف مهمة جدًا في النظام الغذائي الصحي.



We need **protein** to help us grow and to make our bodies strong. There's protein in meat, fish and eggs.

نحتاج البروتين ليساعدنا في النمو ويجعل أجسامنا قوية. يوجد بروتين في اللحوم والأسماك والبيض.

There is **protein in dairy** foods such as milk and cheese too. Dairy foods also give us vitamins and a mineral called calcium. Calcium is good for our bones, heart and muscles.

يوجد بروتين في منتجات الألبان مثل اللبن والجبن أيضًا. منتجات الألبان تعطينا أيضًا فيتامينات ومعادن يسمى الكالسيوم. الكالسيوم مفيد لعظامنا وقلبنا وعضلاتنا.

We need some **fats**, too, because they give us energy and help us absorb some important vitamins. There are healthy fats and oils such as olive oil and butter.

نحتاج بعض الدهون أيضًا. لأنها تمدنا بالطاقة وتساعدنا في امتصاص بعض الفيتامينات الهامة. يوجد دهون وزيتون صحية مثل زيت الزيتون والزبدة.



Activities

1 Look and complete.



carb_h_drates



vit_m_ns



prot__n



f_ts



f_b_r



s_g_r



v_get_bles



d__ry

2 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 There are (vitamins - protein - oil) and fiber in fruit and vegetables.
- 2 Fruit is (bad - good - useless) for our health.
- 3 (Sugar - Protein - Fats) helps our bodies grow.
- 4 Dairy foods have a (mineral - vitamin - protein) called calcium.
- 5 Calcium is good for our (eyes - bones - head), heart and muscles.
- 6 We need healthy fats in some (oils - minerals - candies) to get our vitamins.
- 7 We can find (vitamins - carbohydrates - minerals) in bread, pasta, rice and cereal.
- 8 There are lots of (carbohydrates - fats - vitamins) in fruit.
- 9 We shouldn't eat or drink a lot of (vitamins - protein - sugar).

- 10 There is sugar in (fish - cakes - egg).
- 11 We find protein in (soda - meat - milk).
- 12 Vitamin C makes us (weak - bad - strong).
- 13 Cheese, milk and butter are (sugar - dairy - minerals) foods.
- 14 Our bodies need lots of different (nutrients - fats - soda).
- 15 Apples and bananas are (fats - fruit - vegetables).

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 There is sugar in | a Yes, he does. |
| 2 Protein helps | b They are nutrients in some foods. |
| 3 Does Hany like fruit? | c cake, biscuits and soda. |
| 4 What are vitamins? | d our bodies grow. |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

4 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Carbohydrates give us energy. We can find these in bread, pasta, rice and cereal. We need some fats, too, because they give us energy and help us absorb some important vitamins. There are healthy fats and oils such as olive oil and butter.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 (Carbohydrates - Sugar - Protein) give us energy.
- 2 We can find carbohydrates in (meat - cake - rice).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where do we find healthy fats?
- 4 Why do we need some fats?

Unit (3)

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

1 is - in - protein - foods - There - dairy - .

2 always - at - I - fruit - breakfast - have - .

3 Hana - have - does - What - lunch - for - ?

4 Hany - like - Does - fruits - ?

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



vitamins - fruit



Protein - bodies - strong

7 Copy the following sentence.

We should have a healthy diet.

Lesson (2)

Language use

should / shouldn't

We use **should / shouldn't** for **advice**.

نستخدم (ينبغي / ينبغي ألا) لإعطاء النصيحة.

Affirmative

الإثبات

Subject + **should** + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. You **should** eat a healthy lunch every day.



Negative

النفي

Subject + **should not (shouldn't)** + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. You **shouldn't** eat cookies every day.



(Yes / No) question

Should + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. **Should** he eat some food with carbohydrates?



Yes, he **should**.



No, he **shouldn't**.

Help your child use **should** for advice.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم **should** لإعطاء النصيحة.

Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 Hana (should - don't - shouldn't) eat candies every day.
- 2 (Do - Should - Is) he eat cakes every day?
- 3 Hany (don't - shouldn't - should) eat fruit every day.
- 4 Hana (should - isn't - shouldn't) drink soda every day.
- 5 Should she (skip - skipped - skipping) breakfast?

Look and read. Then answer.

Younis is an athlete. He wants to have a healthy diet. He lives in a hot country and he does a lot of exercise. He's going to do a race tomorrow, so he needs lots of energy.



يونس لاعب ألعاب قُوِي. ويريد أن يكون له نظام غذائي صحي. هو يعيش في دولة حارة ويقوم بالكثير من التمارين.
يونس سيذهب للسباق غداً ولذلك يحتاج الكثير من الطاقة.

- 1 Should Younis eat some food with carbohydrates?

- 2 Should he drink water when he exercises?

- 3 Should he sleep for four hours tonight?

- 4 Should he eat lots of candies and cakes?

1 Fill in the spaces with.

drink - shouldn't - sleep - sugar

- 1 She eat candies every day.
- 2 He should water when he exercises.
- 3 You shouldn't eat a lot of
- 4 You should for 8 hours a night.

2 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 He should (drinks - drink - drinking) a lot of water.
- 2 You (should - should to - shouldn't) stay up late.
- 3 She should (do - does - doing) sports every day.
- 4 No, he (should - shouldn't - isn't) play too many video games.
- 5 (Do - Is - Should) he eat fruit and vegetables?

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- 1 every - You - eat - day - shouldn't - cookies - .
- 2 cakes - Should - eat - he - lots of - ?
- 3 vegetables - You - eat - should - .

Unit (3)

4 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



You - eat - every day



shouldn't - candies - every day



shouldn't - soda



milk

drink - every day

5 Read and write True (T) or False (F).

Sama is a runner. She is going to run in a race at the weekend. She should eat healthy food. She shouldn't eat lots of candies. She should drink lots of water. She shouldn't drink soda.

- 1 Sama should eat lots of candies.
- 2 She is going to run in a race on Monday.
- 3 She should drink lots of water.
- 4 She shouldn't eat healthy food.

Lesson (3)

Reading

Vocabulary

living things	الكائنات الحية	litre	لتر
humans	البشر	pure water	ماء نقي
break down	يتحلل	weather	الطقس
headache	صداع		

Definitions

hydrated	when your body gets enough water	مشبع بالماء	عندما يحصل جسمك على كمية كافية من الماء
dehydrated	when your body doesn't get enough water	جاف	عندما لا يحصل جسمك على كمية كافية من الماء
joints	the parts of your body that move	المفاصل	أجزاء جسمك التي تتحرك
toxins	things you don't want in your body; they can make you ill	السموم	أشياء لا تريدها في جسمك، يمكن أن تجعلك مريضاً
temperature	a measurement of how hot or cold you feel	درجة الحرارة	قياس درجة السخونة أو البرودة التي تشعر بها
sweat	a liquid that comes out of your skin when you are hot	العرق	سائل يخرج من جسمك عندما تشعر بالحرارة

Unit (3)

Look and read.

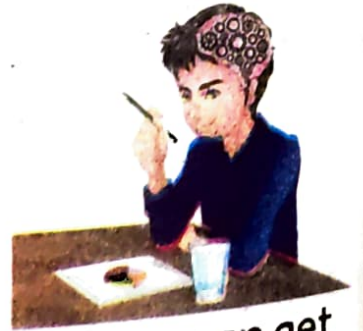
Why do we need water?

All living things need water. Animals and humans drink water. Plants get it from the soil in their roots. We all know water is good for us, but do you know how important it is for our health? Our blood is about 82% water. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients around the body. We eat food, and it breaks down into nutrients in our stomach. Water helps with this, and it also helps carry the nutrients around the body in our blood vessels.



كل الكائنات الحية تحتاج إلى الماء. الحيوانات والبشر يشربون الماء. تحصل النباتات عليه من التربة الزراعية في جذورها. جميعًا نعلم أن الماء مفيد لنا، لكن هل تعرف أهميته لصحتنا؟ يتكون الدم من حوالي ٨٢٪ من الماء. يحمل الدم الأكسجين والعناصر الغذائية حول الجسم. نحن نأكل الطعام ويتحلل إلى عناصر غذائية في معدتنا، يساعدنا الماء في ذلك ويساعد أيضًا في نقل العناصر الغذائية حول الجسم في أوعيتنا الدموية.

Our brains are made up of about 75% water. If you drink enough water, your brain works better. If you don't drink enough water, you get dehydrated.



You feel tired and you don't have a lot of energy. You can get a headache or find it difficult to think. When you are hydrated, it means getting enough water. It's good for your joints, your bones and your body temperature.

يتكون المخ من حوالي ٧٥٪ من الماء. إذا كنت تشرب كمية كافية من الماء، فإن مخك سيعمل بشكل أفضل. إذا لم تشرب كمية كافية من الماء، فإنك ستصاب بالجفاف. وتشعر بالتعب ولن يكون لديك الكثير من الطاقة. يمكن أن تُصاب بالصداع أو تجد صعوبة في التفكير. عندما تكون مشبعًا بالماء هذا يعني حصولك على كمية كافية من الماء. الماء مفيد لمفاصلك وعظامك ودرجة حرارة جسمك.

Water also helps your body to get rid of toxins from your body, and helps the other organs in your body to work well. Children should drink about 1.5 litres of water every day. Most of this should be pure water, but we can also get water from other drinks such as milk, tea and fruit juices, and fruits and vegetables. We should drink more water in hot weather because we lose water when we sweat.



أيضاً يساعد الماء جسمك على التخلص من السموم، ويساعد أعضاء الجسم الأخرى على العمل بشكل جيد. يجب على الأطفال أن يشربوا حوالي ١,٥ لتر من الماء كل يوم. يجب أن تكون معظم هذه المياه نقية ولكن يمكننا أيضاً الحصول على الماء من مشروبات أخرى مثل: اللبن، الشاي، عصير الفواكه والفاكهة، والخضروات. يجب علينا أن نشرب الكثير من الماء في الطقس الحار، لأننا نفقد الكثير من الماء عندما نغرق.



Language

How much? كم كمية.....؟

How much + uncountable noun +?

How much water should children drink every day?

كم كمية الماء التي يجب أن يشربها الأطفال كل يوم؟

1.5 litres.



How much of our blood is made of water?

كم كمية الماء المكون منها دمنا؟

82%





Activities

1 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 If you don't drink enough water, you get (hydrated - dehydrated - temperature).
- 2 When you are (dehydrated - hydrated - sweat), it means you are getting enough water.
- 3 Water helps your body get rid of (joints - toxins - sweat).
- 4 We lose water when we (sweet - sweat - eat).
- 5 Water is good for your body (temperature - toxins - bar).
- 6 (Sweet - Sweat - Meat) is a liquid that comes out of your skin when you are hot.
- 7 (Joints - Toxins - Fruits) are things you don't want in your body; they can make you ill.

2 Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| 1 hydrated | a the parts of your body that move. |
| 2 dehydrated | b when your body gets enough water. |
| 3 temperature | c when your body doesn't get enough water. |
| 4 joints | d how hot or cold you feel. |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

1 much - do - How - water - you - drink - ?

2 should - You - drink - water - pure - .

Lesson (4)

Life skills

Definitions

serving حصصة من الطعام	how much you eat at one time مقدار ما تأكله في المرة الواحدة
calories سعرات حرارية	the amount of energy in food كمية الطاقة في الطعام
sodium الصوديوم	a mineral we need معدن نحن نحتاجه
enough كاف	the right amount الكمية الصحيحة
too much كثير جدًا	more than we need أكثر مما نحتاجه
percent النسبة المئوية	the amount of vitamins or minerals that our bodies need every day كمية الفيتامينات أو المعادن التي نحتاجها أجسامنا كل يوم

Listen and read.

We can look at food packaging to find out what is in our food. This helps us decide if it is healthy or unhealthy. For example, if we see that there are lots of calories and not a lot of vitamins, we can decide to make a different choice. These are some words you will find on a food package:



يمكننا أن ننظر إلى عبوة الطعام لمعرفة ما هو موجود في طعامنا. يساعدنا هذا في تحديد ما إذا كان صحيًا أم غير صحي. على سبيل المثال، إذا رأينا أن هناك الكثير من السعرات الحرارية وليس الكثير من الفيتامينات، فيمكننا أن نقرر اختيار شيء آخر. هذه بعض الكلمات التي ستجدها على عبوة الطعام.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

serving how much you eat at one time
calories the amount of energy in food
sodium this is a mineral; we need enough of it, but we shouldn't have too much. The salt we get in food is sodium mixed with other things. We shouldn't eat food with too much salt in.

المقدار / حصة من الطعام مقدار ما تأكله في المرة الواحدة
 السعرات الحرارية كمية الطاقة في الطعام
 صوديوم هو معدن نحتاج ما يكفي منه، لكن لا ينبغي أن نتناول الكثير منه، الملح الذي نحصل عليه في الطعام عبارة عن صوديوم ممزوج بأشياء أخرى. لا ينبغي أن نأكل الطعام الذي به كثير من الملح.

enough the right amount
too much more than we need
percent when we see something like 50%, it means that this food gives us 50%, or half of the amount of that vitamin or mineral that our bodies need every day.

بإلى الكمية المناسبة
 كثيراً جداً أكثر مما نحتاجه
 نسبة المئوية عندما نرى شيء ما مثل ٥٠٪ هذا يعني أن هذا الطعام يعطينا ٥٠٪ أو نصف كمية هذا الفيتامين أو المعدن الذي نحتاجه أجسامنا كل يوم.

Serving size	30 grams	Sodium	0.3 grams
Energy	115 calories	Fiber	0.6 grams
Fat	0.4 grams	Protein	2.1 grams
Carbohydrate	26 grams	Vitamin C	50% (percent)
Sugar	2.4 grams	Vitamin D	50% (percent)

Listen and read.

- ① We measure energy in calories.
- ② We use percent (%) to measure a nutrient.
- ③ If we know how much we need of a nutrient each day, we can look at what percent, or grams, this food gives us.

نقيس الطاقة بالسعرات الحرارية.

نستخدم النسبة المئوية لقياس العنصر الغذائي.

نعرفنا كمية العناصر الغذائية التي نحتاجها كل يوم، نستطيع أن ننظر إلى النسبة المئوية أو الجرامات، التي تعطينا تلك الأطعمة.



Activities

1 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 Food (**back** - **packaging** - **serving**) can tell us what is in our food.
- 2 There are a lot of (**salt** - **vitamins** - **calories**) in cakes.
- 3 (**Too much** - **Enough** - **Serving**) means the right amount.
- 4 We use (**percent** - **sodium** - **calories**) to measure a nutrient.
- 5 We measure energy in (**grams** - **calories** - **kilo**).
- 6 We need enough (**sodium** - **sugar** - **salt**). It's a mineral.

2 Read and match.

- | | |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 serving | a more than we need |
| 2 calories | b a mineral we need |
| 3 sodium | c the right amount |
| 4 enough | d the amount of energy in food |
| 5 too much | e how much you eat at one time |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- () 5- ()

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- 1 shouldn't- eat- We - salt- too much- .
- 2 fiber- How much - do- need- children- a day- ?

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Al-Bahar - Connect Plus (5) / First Term

son

Choosing a healthy snack

5)

Listen and read.



cake
كعكة



chocolate brownie
كعكة الشوكولاتة



dried fruit bar
قطعة من الفاكهة المجففة



cereal bar
قطعة من الحبوب الغذائية

Then answer.



Energy 128 calories
Fat 3 grams
Sugar 8 grams
Salt 0.2 grams

cake



Energy 143 calories
Fat 6 grams
Sugar 11 grams
Salt 0.1 grams

cereal bar



Energy 310 calories
Fat 21 grams
Sugar 23 grams
Salt 0.2 grams

chocolate brownie



Energy 68 calories
Fat 1.2 grams
Sugar 7 grams
Salt 0.1 grams

dried fruit bar

Which snack has the most calories?
Which snack has the most fat?
Which snack has the most sugar?

Unit (3) What's on your plate?

Help your child listen and read.

Tip:

There is sugar in fruit, so it tastes sweet. Natural sugar in fruit is better for you than sugar in cakes and candies.

يوجد سكر في الفاكهة لذلك فهي حلوة المذاق. السكر الطبيعي في الفاكهة مفيد لك أكثر من السكر الموجود في الكعك والحلويات.

Look and read.

Which snack is your favorite?

أي وجبة خفيفة هي المفضلة لديك؟

I like cereal bars.

أنا أحب قطع الحبوب من من الحبوب.

So do I! And I like dried fruit bars too.

وأنا كذلك! وأحب قطع الفاكهة المجففة أيضًا.



Which snack has 0.2 grams of salt?

أي وجبة خفيفة تحتوي على ٠,٢ جرامًا من الملح؟

Cake.





Activities

1 Look and complete.



c _ k _



cer _ al b _ r



choc _ la _ e



dr _ ed fr _ i

2 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 I like (hydrated - dehydrated - dried) fruit bars.
- 2 I like chocolate (brown - brownie - calories).
- 3 I like cereal (bars - cakes - calories).

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Which snack is | a sugar in fruit. |
| 2 There is natural | b has the most sugar. |
| 3 Chocolate brownie | c your favorite? |
| 4 I like | d dried fruit bars. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

4 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- 1 favorite - snack - Which - your - is - ?

- 2 bars - I - cereal - like - .

- 3 fruit - dried - I - bars - like - .

5 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



favorite - snack



like - chocolate brownie

6 Look and answer the questions below.

Energy: 128calories

Fat : 3grams

Sugar: 8grams

Salt : 0.2grams

Energy: 143calories

Fat : 6grams

Sugar: 11grams

Salt : 0.1grams

Energy: 310calories

Fat : 21grams

Sugar: 23grams

Salt : 0.2grams

Energy: 68calories

Fat : 1.2grams

Sugar: 7grams

Salt : 0.1grams

cake



cereal bar



chocolate brownie



dried fruit bar



A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The (cake - cereal bar - chocolate brownie) has the most sugar.
- 2 The dried fruit bar has (68 - 1.2 - 7) calories.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Which snack has the most fat?
- 4 Which snack has the most sugar?

Lesson
(6)

Learn Sounds with Busy Bee!



Phonics

Listen and repeat.

The letters (tion) make the sound /ʃn/.

tion

/ʃn/



nutrition
التغذية



digestion
الهضم



fiction
قصة / خيال



pollution
التلوث



fire station
محطة إطفاء

Look and read.

The firefighters at the fire station need good nutrition.

رجال الإطفاء في محطة الإطفاء يحتاجون إلى تغذية جيدة.



All this pollution is bad for my digestion!

كل هذا التلوث ضار بعملية الهضم لدي.

I have a new book. It isn't fiction. It's about nutrition and digestion!

لدي كتاب جديد. إنه ليس قصة. إنه عن التغذية والهضم.





Activities

1 Look and complete.



digest _ _ _



fire sta _ _ _



pollu _ _ _



nutrit _ _ _

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

u r t
n i n t
i o



o i e
t d g s
i n



i o i f
c t n



o u l p l
i t o n



e i f r t t
s a i o n



3 Look and complete with:

pollution - fire station



They are at the

There is a lot of

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lesson (7)

Reading

🔊 Listen, point and say.



can
علبة معدنية



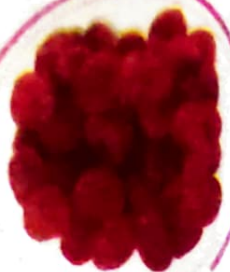
fire
نار



salt
ملح



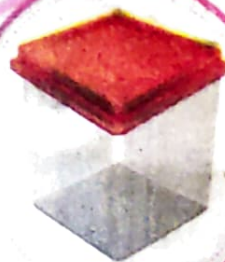
zeer pot
زير (وعاء من الفخار)



drying
التجفيف



jar
برطمان



container
وعاء/حاوية



Look and read.

It's important to eat the right food, but it's also important to look after food to keep it fresh and safe. We need to preserve and store food. If we don't store food properly, it can go bad, and this makes us sick. Now, we can use fridges and freezers to store food. These need electricity to work. How can we preserve food if we don't have electricity? And how did people preserve food in the past?



من المهم تناول الطعام المناسب، ولكن من المهم أيضًا أن نعتني بالطعام للحفاظ عليه طازج وآمن. نحتاج أن نحافظ على الطعام ونخزنه. إذا لم نخزن الطعام بشكل مناسب فإنه قد يفسد وهذا يجعلنا نمرض. الآن يمكننا استخدام الثلاجات وأجهزة التجميد لتخزين الطعام. هذه الأجهزة تحتاج الكهرباء لكي تعمل. كيف نستطيع حفظ الطعام إذا لم يوجد لدينا كهرباء؟ وكيف كان الناس يخزنون الطعام في الماضي؟

1-Fire: People used fire to make smoked meat and fish. We used this a long time ago, and we still use it now.



١- النار: استخدم الناس النار لصنع اللحوم والأسماك المدخنة. استخدمنا ذلك لفترة طويلة ومازلنا نستخدمه حتى الآن.

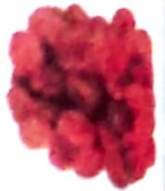
Unit (3)

2- **Salt:** We can add salt to food to preserve it. It takes out the water. People use this all over the world for meat and fish.



٢- الملح: يمكننا أن نضيف الملح للطعام لنحافظ عليه. إنه يمتص الماء. يستخدم الناس هذا في جميع أنحاء العالم للحوم والأسماك.

3- **Drying:** We can dry fruit in the sun. Dried apples, figs, grapes, bananas and mangoes are all delicious. When we dry fruit, it takes out the water and keeps the nutrients. The fruit is sweet and delicious, and it's healthy because we don't add sugar.



٣- التجفيف: يمكننا تجفيف الفاكهة في الشمس. التفاح المجفف والتين والعنب والموز والمango كلها لذيذة. عندما نجفف الفاكهة، فإنها تمتص الماء وتحافظ على العناصر الغذائية. الفاكهة حلوة ولذيذة، وصحية لأنها لا تضيف السكر.

4- **Containers:** There are different ways of storing food in containers.



٤- الأوعية / الحاويات: يوجد طرق مختلفة لتخزين الطعام في الأوعية.

Zeerpots: Thousands of years ago, people invented zeerpots to keep food fresh. The food is inside one ceramic pot. This pot is put inside a bigger ceramic pot. You put sand between the two pots, then put water in the sand. The water takes the heat away and the food stays cool.

أواني الزير: منذ آلاف السنين، اخترع الناس أواني الزير للحفاظ على الطعام طازجاً. يكون الطعام داخل وعاء خزفي واحد. يتم وضع هذا الإناء داخل وعاء خزفي أكبر. توضع الرمال بين الإنائين. ثم توضع الماء في الرمال. يزيل الماء الحرارة ويبقى الطعام بارداً.

Cans and jars: People also use cans and jars to preserve food. You put the food in a liquid with salt, and close the can. No air gets into the jar or can, and the food lasts for years.



العلب والبرطمانات: يستخدم الناس أيضاً العلب والبرطمانات لحفظ الطعام. توضع الطعام في سائل مع الملح، وتغلق العلب. لا يدخل الهواء إلى البرطمان أو العلب، ويبقى الطعام لسنوات.



Activities

1 Look and complete.



f _ r _



c _ nt _ iner



c _ n



j _ r

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

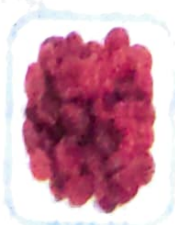
l s

t a



r i d

g n y



e r e z

o p t



3 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 We need to (preserve - dry - heat) food in the fridge.
- 2 People use (drying - fire - electricity) to make smoked meat and fish.
- 3 We can add (water - salt - nutrient) to food to preserve it.
- 4 There are different ways of storing food in (electricity - fictions - containers).
- 5 Thousands of years ago, people invented (zeer pots - fridges - cans) to keep food fresh.
- 6 We can (use - dry - add) food in the sun.
- 7 People use (pollution - cans - nutrition) to preserve food.
- 8 We can keep food in (digestion - jars - fire).
- 9 If we don't have (water - electricity - oil), we can't keep food in fridges and freezers.
- 10 We can store food in (cans - cars - water).

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (3)

4 Read and match.

- 1 We add salt to food
- 2 If we don't store food properly,
- 3 We need to preserve food
- 4 Fridges

- a it can go bad.
- b need electricity to work.
- c to take out the water.
- d to keep it fresh and safe.

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

5 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

1 food - It - important - the right - is - to eat - .

2 food - People - preserve - use - jars - to - .

3 can - the sun - We - fruit - dry - in - .

6 Read the passage then answer the questions.

It's important to eat the right food, but it's also important to look after food to keep it fresh and safe. We need to preserve and store food. If we don't store food properly, it can go bad, and this makes us sick. Now, we can use fridges and freezers to store food. These need electricity to work.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 We can use (freezers - TVs - computers) to store food.
- 2 If we don't keep food properly, it makes us (fresh - sick - safe).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What do fridges need to work?
- 4 Why is it important to look after food?

Listening and reading CLIL: Math

Look and read.

Sugar



What is your favorite snack? There are lots of things we can choose from. Sometimes it's easy to take a **cookie** or a **candy**, but they have a lot of **sugar** in them. Why is eating sugar bad for us?



ما هي وجبتك المفضلة؟ هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكننا الاختيار من بينها. أحياناً يكون من السهل أن تأخذ قطعة من كعكة محلاة أو من الحلوى، ولكنها تحتوي على الكثير من السكر. لماذا يُعد تناول السكر مضر بالنسبة لنا؟

Sugar is bad for our **teeth**. Eating too much sugar **damages** our teeth.

Do you like going to the **dentist**?



السكر مضر بأسناننا. تناول الكثير من السكر يدمر أسناننا. هل تحب الذهاب إلى طبيب الأسنان؟

Sugar is bad for our heart too. It stops our **arteries** working as well as they should. Over a long time, this can **damage** our heart.



السكر مضر بقلبنا أيضاً. إنه يوقف الشرايين عن العمل كما ينبغي. مع مرور الوقت، يمكن لهذا أن يدمر قلبنا.

Unit (3)



Sugar gives us **energy**, but it isn't a good kind. When we get energy from carbohydrates, that energy **lasts** a long time. When we get energy from sugar, we lose it **quickly**. Then our body wants more sugar.

يمنحنا السكر الطاقة، لكنها ليست من النوع الجيد. عندما نحصل على الطاقة من الكربوهيدرات. فإن هذه الطاقة تستمر لفترة طويلة. عندما نحصل على الطاقة من السكر، نفقدها بسرعة. بعد ذلك يريد جسمنا المزيد من السكر.

Sugar can **affect** our brains. If we have too much sugar, our brains get a lot of energy quickly. This can make our brain **confused**. We can feel **worried** and **anxious**. Sugar can be bad for our mood.



يمكن أن يؤثر السكر على مخنا. إذا تناولنا الكثير من السكر، فإن أجهزة المخ لدينا تحصل على الكثير من الطاقة بسرعة. هذا يمكن أن يجعل المخ مرتبك. ويمكن أن نشعر بالقلق والتوتر. يمكن أن يكون السكر ضارًا بحالتنا المزاجية.

Math

Look and read.

Children shouldn't have more than **25 grams** of sugar a day. **25 grams** is about six teaspoons. One teaspoon has **four grams** of sugar.



يجب ألا يتناول الأطفال أكثر من ٢٥ جرام من السكر يوميًا. ٢٥ جرام تساوي تقريبًا ٦ ملاعق صغيرة. تحتوي الملعقة الصغيرة على ٤ جرامات من السكر.

Tip:

There is natural sugar in fruit. This is better than sugar that is added to food such as cakes and candies.

يوجد سكر طبيعي في الفاكهة وهو أفضل من السكر الذي يضاف إلى الطعام مثل الكيك والحلوى.

Complete the table. Then answer the questions.

$$1 \text{ teaspoon} = 4 \text{ grams}$$

Snack	Sugar	
	grams	teaspoons
orange	14	3.5
fruit yogurt	12	.....
plain yogurt	.....	1
cereal bar	6	.....
one cookie	8	.....

① How many **teaspoons** of sugar are there in 1 orange, 1 plain yogurt and 1 cookie?

② How many **grams** of sugar are there in 3 cookies, 1 fruit yogurt and 1 cereal bar?

Order from lowest to highest.



Activities

1 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 (Milk - Sugar - Meat) is bad for our teeth.
- 2 Eating too much sugar (helps - damages - stops) our teeth.
- 3 Sugar stops our (arteries - knees - elbows) working well.
- 4 We can feel (worried - happy - fine) and anxious.
- 5 Sugar gives us (electricity - energy - water).
- 6 Sugar can be bad for our (knees - mood - skin).
- 7 Sugar can affect our (brains - legs - fingers).
- 8 One (zeer pot - teaspoon - jar) has four grams of sugar.
- 9 There is natural sugar in (candies - sweets - fruit).
- 10 Cakes and candies have (salt - electricity - sugar).

2 Read and match.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 What's your favourite snack? | a our brains. |
| 2 Eating too much sugar | b about six teaspoons. |
| 3 Sugar can affect | c damages our teeth. |
| 4 25 grams of sugar is | d Cookies. |

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

3 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

1 sugar - decided - eat - I - to - less - .

2 natural - There - sugar - is - fruit - in - .

3 bad for - Sugar - our - is - teeth - .

4 Read the passage then answer the questions.

I decided to eat less sugar. I look carefully at the snacks I choose. Now I have plain yogurt, and I don't drink chocolate milk. I drink more water and I eat fruit. I still enjoy sweet snacks, like chocolate cookies, but I don't eat them every day. I have more energy, and I sleep better at night. I'm happy!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 I have (sweet - plain - salty) yogurt.
- 2 I (enjoy - drink - decide) sweet snacks, but I don't eat them every day.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 When do you sleep better?
- 4 What did you decide to eat?

5 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



sugar- energy



sugar- natural- fruit

Activities on Unit (3)

1 Look and complete.



veg_t_bles



d_iry



f_ts



pollu_

2 Fill in the spaces with.

much - healthy - should - sugar

- Heba : Do you eat _____ (1) food?
 Samy : Yes. We _____ (2) always do this.
 Heba : What about _____ (3) ?
 Samy : You shouldn't eat too _____ (4) sugar. It's bad.

3 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 We (should - shouldn't - does) eat fruit every day.
- 2 We (shouldn't - should - does) eat a lot of cookies.
- 3 Fruit is (bad - healthy - hot)!
- 4 (Fiber - Fat - Calcium) is good for our bones.
- 5 You should (eat - eats - eating) a healthy lunch.

4 Read the passage then answer the questions.

It's important to get a balance of the right kinds of food. Our bodies need lots of different nutrients, including vitamins and minerals, to work well and be healthy.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Our bodies need different (plates - ways - nutrients) to work well.

2) It is important to get a (balance - teaspoon - place) of the right kinds of food.

B) Answer the following questions.

3) What do nutrients include?

4) Why do we need different nutrients?

5) Look and write a sentence under each picture.



should- eat



sugar- bad - teeth

6) Copy the following sentence.

You should stay healthy.

Activities on Review (1)

1 Look and complete.



m _ dal



p _ ll _ tion



l _ ngs



f _ _ d

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

e r h
t a



l t e
a t e
h



l u s
k l



3 Fill in the spaces with.

bodies - balanced - should - exercise

Amal : Do you do (1) _____ every day?

Sara : Yes. It's important and good for our (2) _____.

Amal : What (3) _____ I eat to stay healthy?

Sara : You should eat (4) _____ diet.

4 Choose the correct word(s).

1 You (should - shouldn't - does) wear a helmet when you ride a bike.

2 Will it (is - are - be) a good competition?

3 The (heart - lungs - skeleton) moves blood around the body.

4 Our (lungs - skull - tongue) protects our brain and our eyes.

5 We break down food in our (saliva - skin - stomach).

5 Read and match.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a The stomach acid | e nutrients around the body. |
| b Our skin protects us from | b we chew food.. |
| c Blood carries oxygen and | c the sun, dirt and germs. |
| d We use muscles when | d breaks down food in our stomach. |

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

6 Read the passage then answer the questions.

What is your favorite snack? There are lots of things we can choose from. Sometimes it's easy to take a cookie or a candy, but they have a lot of sugar in them. Sugar is bad for our teeth. Eating too much sugar damages our teeth. Sugar is bad for our heart too. It stops our arteries working as well as they should. Over a long time, this can damage our heart.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- a Cookies and candies are (snakes - snacks - meals).
- b Sugar can damage the (bones - muscle - heart).

B) Answer the following questions.

- a Is sugar bad for our teeth?
- b What can sugar do with arteries?

7 Copy the following sentence.

I do exercise every day.

Non-fiction Reader: Hospitals

Listen, point and say.



nurse

ممرضة



doctor

طبيب



surgeon

طبيب جراح



cook

طباخ

People in a hospital

العامليون في المستشفى



carer

موظف الرعاية



porter

حامل / حافلة



cleaner

عامل نظافة



receptionist

موظف الاستقبال

look and read.

Who works in a hospital?



Doctors can find out why you are sick. They know what medicine you need to take and what you need to do to get better.

Nurses can look after you. They give you the right

medicine and help you get **better**.

يمكن للأطباء معرفة سبب مرضك. إنهم يعرفون الدواء الذي تحتاج إلى تناوله وما عليك القيام به لتحسن. يمكن للممرضات الاعتناء بك. يعطونك الدواء المناسب ويساعدونك على التحسن.

If you are very sick, sometimes you need an operation.

A **surgeon** can do an operation.

إذا كنت مريضاً جداً، تحتاج أحياناً إلى إجراء عملية جراحية. يمكن للجراح أن يقوم بإجراء عملية جراحية.

A hospital has to be very clean all the time, so it is important to have **cleaners**.

يجب أن تكون المستشفى نظيفة جداً طوال الوقت، لذلك من المهم أن يكون لديهم عمال نظافة.

The **receptionist** organizes the **appointments**. They know what time you need to see the doctor.

موظف الاستقبال ينظم المواعيد. إنهم يعرفون الوقت الذي تحتاجه لرؤية الطبيب.

The **patient** is the person who is sick.

المريض هو الشخص الذي يشعر بـعلة.

A **carer** looks after someone who is sick for a long time.

People sometimes need extra help to do things.

يعتني موظف الرعاية بشخص مريض لفترة طويلة. يحتاج الناس أحياناً إلى مساعدة إضافية للقيام بالأشياء.

A **porter** can help you move around the hospital if you can't walk on your own.

يمكن أن يساعدك **الحمال** في التنقل في المستشفى إذا كنت لا تستطيع المشي بمفردك.

People need healthy food in hospitals, so the **cooks** in the kitchens are important too. They have to think about nutrition and give the patients a balanced diet.

يحتاج الناس إلى طعام صحي في المستشفيات، لذا فإن **الطهاة** في المطابخ مهمون أيضًا. يجب عليهم التفكير في التغذية وإعطاء المرضى وجبة غذائية متوازنة.



1 Doctors can find out why you are sick.



2 Nurses can give you medicine.



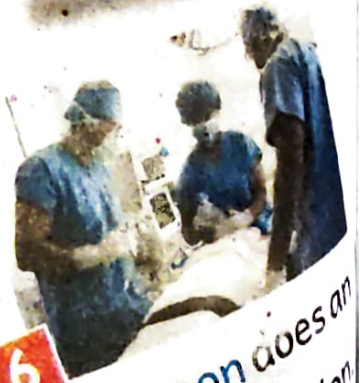
3 Cleaners are very important!



4 A receptionist organizes your appointment.



5 A **porter** can help a patient move around the hospital.



6 A **surgeon** does an operation.



7 Carers look after people.



8 The **cooks** prepare healthy food.

Look and read.

What happens when you go to hospital?

ما الذي يحدث عندما تذهب للمستشفى؟



A doctor or nurse sometimes takes your **temperature**. If you are ill, you can be too hot or too cold. They use a **thermometer** to find out what your body temperature is.

يقوم الطبيب أو الممرضة أحيانًا بقياس درجة حرارتك. إذا كنت مريضًا، فقد تكون درجة حرارتك مرتفعة أو شديدة البرودة. يستخدمون مقياس حرارة لمعرفة درجة حرارة جسمك.



A doctor or nurse can measure your **blood pressure**, too. This shows how well your heart is pumping blood around your arteries. This can help them find out how healthy you are.

يمكن للطبيب أو الممرضة قياس ضغط الدم أيضًا. يوضح هذا مدى جودة ضخ قلبك للدم حول الشرايين. يمكن أن يساعدهم ذلك في معرفة مدى صحتك.



You can have an **X-ray** to find out if a bone is broken.

يمكنك إجراء أشعة سينية لمعرفة إذا كان هناك عظمة مكسورة.



If you have an accident and break a bone, you can have a **cast** put on your arm or leg. You have to wear it for about six weeks!

إذا تعرضت لحادث وكسرت عظمة، فيمكنك وضع جبيرة على ذراعك أو ساقك. عليك أن ترتديه لمدة ستة أسابيع.



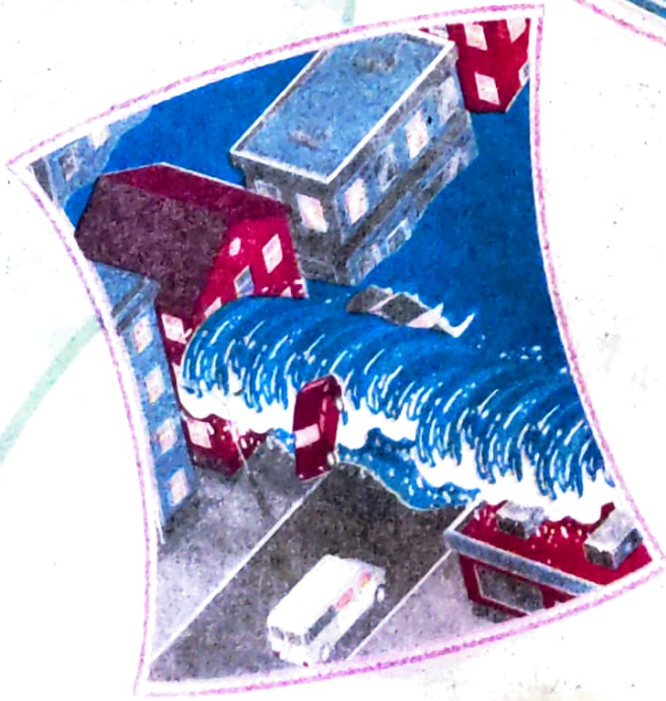
If you injure a muscle, a nurse can put a **bandage** on. This will support your arm or leg so your muscle can get better.

إذا أصيبت إحدى العضلات، يمكن للممرضة وضع ضمادة عليها. سوف يدعم ويحمي ذلك ذراعك أو ساقك لذا يمكن أن تتحسن عضلاتك.

Theme (2)

The world around me

(Taking care of our world)



Unit (4)

In the wild

في البرية



Scope and Sequence:

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

Animals: cheetah, chimpanzee, cobra, fennec fox, macaw, sea lion, sloth, spider monkey, crayfish, goose, mole, squirrel
Animal activity: build nests, chase, dig burrows, gather, hide, hunt, live in holes, take shelter
Habitat: desert, equator, grassland, North Pole, polar, rainforest, South Pole, swamp, temperate, tropical, wetland

Language

المفردات

- It might live in Africa - It might not grass

Reading

القراءة

- A text about animal behavior; a text about rainforests; a text about changes in habitats

Phonics

الصوتيات

- mpc mp sw mp - grassland, wetland - hunt, tent

Life skills

المهارات الحياتية

- Critical thinking: comparing the pros and cons of a topic

Values

القيم

- Compassion - Participation

Issues and challenges

القضايا والتحديات

- Awareness of rights and duties - Environmental responsibility

Integrated cross-curriculum topics

التكامل عبر موضوعات المنهج

- Geography: analysis of maps, different landscapes and climates
- Science: reacting to change, pros and cons of human activity in landscape, natural disasters

Listen, point and say.

Wild animals

الحيوانات البرية



sloth

دُب الكسلان



fennec fox

ثعلب القنك



squirrel

سنجاب



mole

حيوان الخلد



spider monkey

قرد العنكبوت



cheetah

الفهد الصياد



macaw

المكاو (ببغاء أمريكي)



chimpanzee

شمبانزي



cobra

ثعبان الكبرى



lion

أسد

Birds

طيور



owl
بومة



Egyptian goose
إوزة مصرية

Lessons (1 & 2)

Sea animals

حيوانات بحرية



crayfish
جراد البحر (سلطعون)



turtle
سلحفاة مائية



penguin
البطريق

Animal behavior

سلوك الحيوانات



take shelter
يتخذ مأوى



gather
يتجمع



hide
يختبئ



hunt
يصطاد



chase
يطارد



build a nest
يبني عشا



use sticks
يستخدم العصي



dig burrows
يحفر الجحور



live in holes
يعيش في حفر

Help your child identify animal behavior.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على سلوك الحيوانات.

Look, listen and say.

It was great at the **wildlife park** yesterday, wasn't it?

كان الوقت مستعاً في حديقة الحيوانات البرية بالأمس، أليس كذلك؟

I thought the **sloth** was great!
It moved very slowly.

أعتقد أن دب الكسلان كان رائعاً، كان يتحرك ببطء جداً.

Yes, it was. I loved seeing the **chimpanzees**.

نعم، لقد أحببت رؤية حيوانات الشمبانزي.



Yes, that's a great idea!

نعم، هذه فكرة رائعة!

Let's look on the wildlife park **webcam**. We might see it again!

لماذا بنا نلقى نظرة على كاميرا الويب الخاصة بحديقة الحياة البرية. قد تراه مرة أخرى!

Vocabulary

keep warm	يبقى دافئاً	behave	يتصرف	ground	أرض
close to	قريب من	habitat	موطن / بيئة	hide	يختبئ
leaves	أوراق الشجر	protect	يحمي	safe	آمن

Listen and read.

When we visit a wildlife park, we can learn how animals **behave** by watching what they do. In wildlife parks, animals live in places, which are **close to** their natural habitat. But how do animals behave in **the wild**?



عندما نزر حديقة الحياة البرية، يمكننا أن نتعلم كيف تتصرف الحيوانات من خلال مشاهدة ما تفعله. تعيش الحيوانات في حدائق الحياة البرية في أماكن قريبة من بيئتها الطبيعية. لكن كيف تتصرف الحيوانات في البرية؟

Animals live in habitats where they can get food and water, and live safely. Animals take shelter so they can stay warm, be safe from other animals, and protect their families.

تعيش الحيوانات في مواطن حيث يمكنها الحصول على الطعام والماء والعيش بأمان فيها. فتلجأ الحيوانات للمأوى حتى تبقى دافئة، وتكون في مأمن من الحيوانات الأخرى، وتحمي عائلاتها.

Lots of birds build **nests** in trees. They use grass, **sticks** and leaves.

تبني كثير من الطيور أعشاش في الأشجار. يستخدمون الحشائش والعصى، وأوراق الأشجار.



Other birds such as owls live in **holes** in trees. They don't make holes. They find them.

تعيش طيور أخرى مثل البوم في فتحات في الأشجار. لا يقومون بصنع الفتحات، هم يجدونها.



Foxes and rabbits dig **burrows** in the ground.
They can take shelter here. They dig in earth
or sand.



تُحفر الثعالب والأرانب جحوزًا في الأرض. يمكنهم أن يتخذوا مأوى هنا. إنهم يحفرون في الأرض أو الرمال.

Crayfish live in rivers. They hide under rocks in
the day time and come out to find food at night.



يعيش جراد البحر في الأنهار. ويختبئون تحت الصخور في النهار ويخرجون للبحث عن
الطعام في الليل.

Lions and cheetahs **hunt** other animals to eat.
Sometimes it's difficult to get food.



تصطاد الأسود والفهود الحيوانات الأخرى لتأكلها. أحيانًا يكون من الصعب الحصول على
الطعام.

Penguins gather in a large group, called
a **colony**, to keep warm. Thousands of penguins
can live together!



تتجمع طيور البطريق في مجموعة كبيرة، تُسمى مستعمرة، لتبقى دافئة. يمكن أن يعيش
الآف من طيور البطريق معًا!

Look and read.

The cheetah is the fastest animal in the world.

الفهد الصياد أسرع حيوان في العالم.



The sloth moves very slowly.

يتحرك دب الكسلان ببطء شديد.



The macaw is a very colorful bird.

المكاو (الببغاء الأمريكي) طائر ملون جدًا.



The cobra is a dangerous snake.

يعتبر الكوبرا ثعبان خطير.



The sea lion lives in the water but it isn't a fish.

يعيش أسد البحر في المياه ولكنه لا يعتبر سمكة.



The chimpanzee is big. It lives in the forest. It doesn't have a tail.

الشمبانزي كبير. يعيش في الغابة. وليس له ذيل.



Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big ears.

يعيش ثعلب الفنك في الصحراء. وله أذن كبيرة.



The spider monkey is small. It lives in the forest. It has a tail.

قرد العنكبوت صغير. ويعيش في الغابة. وله ذيل.



The penguins live in a large group called a colony.

تعيش البطاريق في مجموعة كبيرة تسمى مستعمرة.



The owl lives in a hole in a tree.

تعيش البومة في حفرة في الشجرة.



Crayfish take shelter under rocks in rivers.

جراد البحر (السلطعون) يحتوى تحت الصخور في الأنهار.



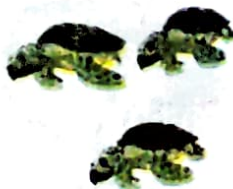
Lions and cheetahs hunt other animals to eat.

تصطاد الأسود والفهود حيوانات أخرى لتأكلها.



Turtles hide under rocks.

تختبئ السلاحف تحت الصخور.





Activities

1 | Look and complete.



che _ ta _



chim _ anze _



fe _ ec f _ x



m _ ca _



se _ l _ on



s _ o _ h



s _ ider m _ nkey



c _ b _ a

2 | Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

o _



i _ n

r i c y

h s f a



r l t

e t u



w _

o _



l _

n u n

p _ g e i



u s q l

e i r r



3 | Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 Lots of birds (build - swim - climb) nests in trees.
- 2 Penguins gather in a large group called a (nest - colony - burrow).
- 3 (Crayfish - Squirrels - Lions) live in rivers.
- 4 Lions and cheetahs (build - hunt - swim) other animals.
- 5 Rabbits and foxes (dig - hunt - climb) burrows.
- 6 Penguins live in a colony to keep (cold - calm - warm).
- 7 (Birds - Rabbits - Cheetahs) live in nests.
- 8 Animals take (homes - houses - shelter) to stay warm and be safe.
- 9 (Birds - Lions - Turtles) hide under rocks.
- 10 Penguins gather in large (teams - groups - nests).

4 | Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1 A penguin | a) takes shelter under rocks in rivers. |
| 2 An owl | b) hunt other animals to eat. |
| 3 A crayfish | c) lives in a large group called a colony. |
| 4 Lions and cheetahs | d) lives in a hole in a tree. |

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

5 | Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 live - Penguins - together - a colony - in - .

2 foxes - Rabbits - burrows - dig - and - .

3 visited - park - I - a wildlife - .

6 | Read the passage then answer the questions.

When we visit a wildlife park, we can learn how animals behave by watching what they do. In wildlife parks, animals live in places which are close to their natural habitats. But how do animals behave in the wild? Animals live in habitats where they can get food and water, and live safely. Animals take shelter so they can stay warm, be safe from other animals, and protect their families.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 In wildlife parks, we can learn how animals behave by (watching - hunting - climbing) them.

2 Animals live in places which are (far - close - away) to their natural habitats.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 How do animals live in habitats?

4 Why do animals take shelter?

7 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



dig - burrows



move - slowly

8 Fill in the spaces with:

gather - hide - nests - hunt

- 1 Lots of birds build in trees.
- 2 Penguins in a colony to keep warm.
- 3 Crayfish under rocks.
- 4 Lions and cheetahs other animals.

9 Read and complete.

rabbit - macaw - fox - birds

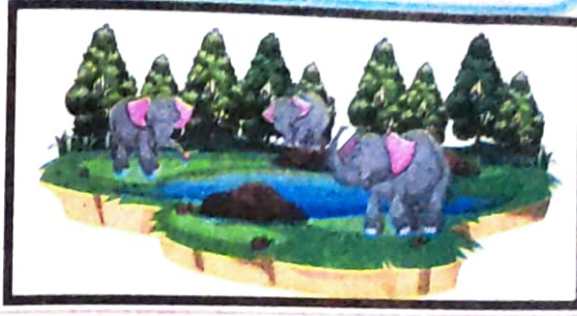
Dig a burrow	Build a nest
.....	
.....	
.....	

10 Copy the following sentence.

I love seeing the chimpanzees.

Lesson (3)

LANGUAGE USE



Welcome to the Animal Show! Look! What do you know about this animal? What do elephants eat?

مرحبًا بكم في عرض الحيوانات! انظروا! ماذا تعرف عن هذا الحيوان؟ ماذا تأكل الأفيال؟

Hmm. They're very big, but I don't think they eat meat. I think they might eat grass.

همم! إنها كبيرة جدًا، لكن لا أعتقد أنهم يأكلون اللحم. أعتقد أنهم ربما يأكلون الحشائش.

Correct! OK, next. Is the elephant the biggest animal in the world?

صحيح! حسنًا، التالي. هل الفيل هو أكبر حيوان في العالم؟

Er, no. I don't think it is. I think blue whales might be the biggest animals in the world.

لا. لا أعتقد أنه كذلك. أعتقد أن الحيتان الزرقاء ربما تكون أكبر الحيوانات في العالم.

Correct again. Last question. Elephants can swim, true or false?

صحيح مرة أخرى. السؤال الأخير. يمكن للأفيال أن تسبح، صواب أم خطأ؟

Well, they don't live near the sea, so I think they might not be able to swim.

حسنًا، إنهم لا يعيشون بالقرب من البحر، لذلك أعتقد أنهم ربما لا يستطيعون السباحة.

That's incorrect - elephants can swim in rivers very well!

هذا غير صحيح - يمكن للفيلة السباحة في الأنهار بشكل جيد جدًا.

Help your child listen to the dialogue.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى المحادثة.

might / might not

Usage \

We use "might" when we are not sure of something.
 نستخدم might عند عدم التأكد من شيء ما.

الاستخدام

Affirmative \

Subject + might + inf.

e.g. This animal might live in Africa.



Negative \

Subject + might not + inf.

e.g. This animal might not be able to swim.



★ Look at the pictures and complete with:

might - might not

1 It be able to move fast.



2 It lives in rivers. It take shelter under a rock.



3 It's a small bird. It live in a hole.



4 It lives in rivers. It eat fish.



Help your child use might and might not.
 ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم might and might not.



Activities

1 Complete the following dialogue with:

might not - biggest - grass - whale

Sara : What do elephants eat?

Mazen : I think they might eat (1)

Sara : Is the elephant the (2) animal in the world?

Mazen : No. I think it might be the blue (3)

Sara : Can elephants swim?

Mazen : I think they (4) be able to swim.

2 Choose the correct word(s).

1 This animal might (live - lives - living) in Africa.

2 This animal might not (eat - eats - eating) grass.

3 Rabbits might (no - not - non) swim in rivers.

4 Elephants don't live near the sea, so I think they (might - might not - can) be able to swim.

5 I think turtles (might - have not - should) take shelter under rocks.

3 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 live - Africa - Elephants - in - might - .

2 might - It - swim - not - able to - be - .

3 not - rivers - Elephants - swim - might - in - .

Lesson (4)

Reading Understanding different habitats

 Listen, point and say.



polar habitat
البيئة القطبية



desert
صحراء



rainforest
غابة مطيرة



grassland
المراعي / أرض عشبية



Habitats
البيئات الطبيعية



wetland
أرض رطبة



Definitions

Equator an imaginary line all around the middle of the Earth
خط الاستواء

North Pole the point at the farthest north of the world
نقط الشمالى

South Pole the point at the farthest south of the world
نقط الجنوبى

Look and read.

Lesson (4)

A habitat is a place with a particular kind of climate and landscape. There are different habitats all over the world. They have different animals, plants, and non-living things.

الموطن هو مكان به نوع خاص من المناخ والمناظر الطبيعية. هناك مواطن مختلفة في جميع أنحاء العالم. وبها حيوانات ونباتات وكنات غير حية مختلفة.

Compare these three habitats:

قارن هذه المواطن الثلاثة:



polar

In a polar habitat, there is snow and ice, and everything looks white. There aren't any trees, and the plants are small. Animals can take shelter in burrows.

في البيئة القطبية، يوجد ثلوج وجليد ويبدو كل شيء أبيض. لا توجد أي أشجار، والنباتات صغيرة. يمكن للحيوانات أن تتخذ مأوى في الجحور.

There are rainforests in warm, tropical parts of the world. Lots of animals here live in the trees and they eat leaves and fruit. It is hot and wet, and the trees grow lots of fruit.



rainforests

توجد غابات مطيرة في الأجزاء الاستوائية الدافئة من العالم. يعيش الكثير من الحيوانات هنا في الأشجار ويأكلون أوراق الأشجار والفاكهة. يكون الجو حارًا ورطبًا وتثمر الأشجار الكثير من الفاكهة.



wetland

A wetland can be wet all the time. Wetlands can be near the sea or near a river. A swamp is a wetland where there are lots of trees. The tree roots can be in the water and animals hide in them.

يمكن للأرض الرطبة أن تكون رطبة طوال الوقت. يمكن أن تكون الأراضي الرطبة بالقرب من البحر أو بالقرب من النهر. المستنقع هو عبارة عن أرض رطبة حيث يوجد الكثير من الأشجار. يمكن أن تكون جذور الشجرة في الماء وتخفي الحيوانات فيها.

Look and read.

Lesson (4)



An **arctic fox** is white. It **digs burrows** in the ground. It lives in a **polar** habitat.

A **spider monkey** eats fruit and lives in **trees**. It lives in a **rainforest** habitat.



Crayfish often live in dark, warm **water** and **take shelter** in tree roots. They live in a **wetland** habitat.

Macaws have beautiful colored feathers. They eat **fruit** and **leaves**. They live in a **rainforest** habitat.



Wolves have light colored **fur**. They eat rabbits and other animals. They live in a **grassland** habitat.

Turtles eat plants and animals in the water and on land. They live in a **wetland** habitat.



Look and read.

There are different habitats around the world because of the different climate and conditions. Some parts of the world are cold, and some are hot.

هناك مواطن مختلفة حول العالم بسبب المناخ والظروف المختلفة. بعض أجزاء العالم باردة والبعض الآخر حار.

Equator - this is an imaginary line all around the middle of the Earth.

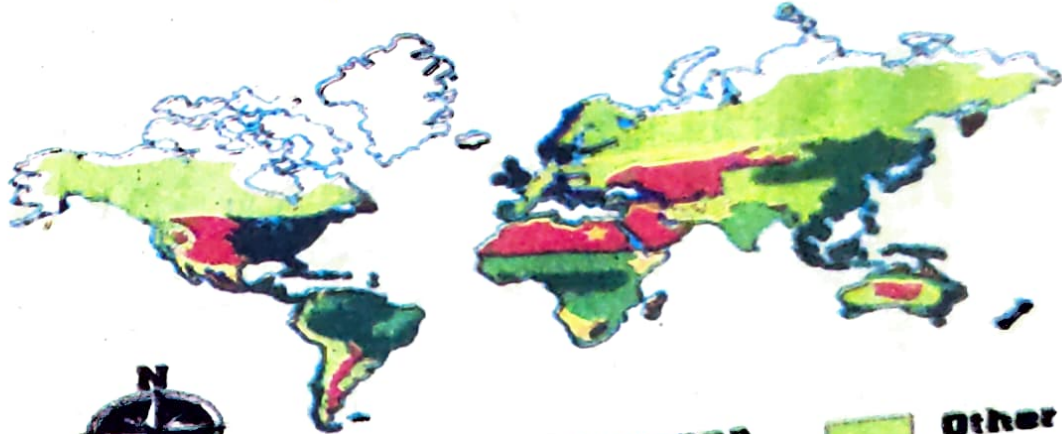
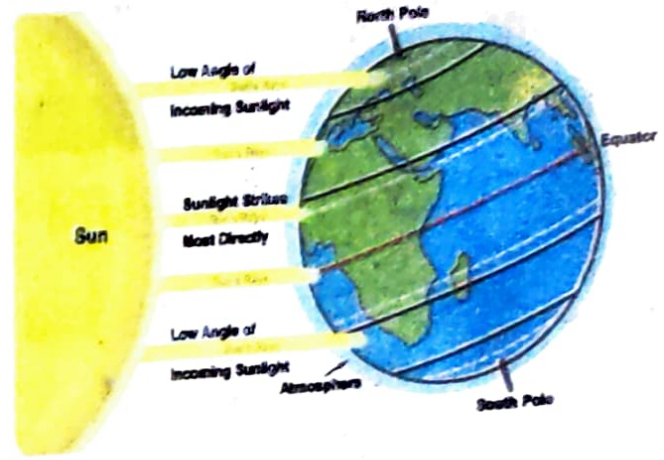
خط الاستواء هو خط وهمي حول منتصف الأرض.

North Pole - this is the point at the farthest north of the world.

القطب الشمالي هذه هي (النقطة / المنطقة) في أقصى شمال العالم.

South Pole - this is the point at the farthest south of the world.

القطب الجنوبي هذه هي (النقطة / المنطقة) في أقصى جنوب العالم.



Polar
Tropical Rainforest



Savanna
Grassland
Desert



Other
Egypt

The equator gets the most sunshine. It is hot here for all 12 months of the year. The North and South Poles don't get a lot of sunshine. It is very cold in these parts of the world. We can see the different habitats on a map of the world.

يحصل خط الاستواء على أكبر قدر من أشعة الشمس. يكون الجو حارًا هنا طوال ١٢ شهرًا من العام. لا يحصل القطب الشمالي والجنوبي على الكثير من أشعة الشمس. الجو شديد البرودة في هذه الأجزاء من العالم. نستطيع أن نرى المواطن المختلفة على خريطة العالم.

Help your child about different habitats.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن البيئات المختلفة.



Activities

1 Look and complete.



ra _nf _r _st



we _la _d



gra _ _land



d _ _ert

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

s a a
d n g r
l s



s e r
f r o t
n i a



e d s
t e r



t q r e
o u a



l o
r p a



t n e l
d w a



3 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 near - are - Wetland - the sea - habitats - .

2 The equator - sunshine - gets - most - the - .

3 monkey - fruit - A spider - eats - .

4 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 A/An (spider monkey - crayfish - arctic fox) lives in the polar habitat.
- 2 The (equator - North Pole - South Pole) is the point at the farthest north of the world.
- 3 A (polar - tropical - swamp) habitat has snow and ice.
- 4 Wetlands can be near (deserts - North Pole - rivers).
- 5 The (South Pole - equator - North Pole) is the point at the farthest south of the world.
- 6 (Macaws - Sloths - Spider monkeys) have colored feathers.
- 7 A spider monkey lives in a (desert - polar - rainforest) habitat.
- 8 The (equator - North Pole - South Pole) is an imaginary line all around the middle of the Earth.
- 9 Wolves have (feathers - fur - leaves).
- 10 (Macaws - Crayfish - Spider monkeys) live in dark, warm water and take shelter in tree roots.
- 11 There is (rain - snow - sand) and ice in a polar habitat.
- 12 Rainforests are (cold - warm - wind) and wet places.
- 13 A turtle lives in a (polar - rainforest - wetland) habitat.
- 14 A swamp is a wetland habitat with lots of (trees - people - cars).
- 15 Some animals take shelter in (houses - burrows - homes).

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

There are different habitats around the world because of the different climate and conditions. Some parts of the world are cold, and some are hot. The equator is the hottest part of the world. The North and South Poles are the coldest parts of the world. The equator gets the most sunshine. It is hot for all 12 months of the year. The North and South Poles don't get a lot of sunshine.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The (equator - North Pole - South Pole) gets the most sunshine.
- 2 The North Pole is very (hot - warm - cold).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why is the equator the hottest part of the world?
- 4 Why are there different habitats?

6 Look at the pictures and complete with:

polar - wetland - rainforest

- 1 A spider monkey lives in a habitat.



- 2 A turtle lives in a habitat.



- 3 An arctic fox lives in a habitat.



Lessons
(5 & 6)

Learn Sounds With Busy Bee! Reading



Phonics



Listen and repeat.

-nd



grassland
مرعى / أرض عُشبية



wetland
أرض رطبة

-nt



tent
خيمة



hunt
يصاد

-mp



swamp
مستنقع



camp
معسكر

Look and say.



Can I **camp** in a **wetland**?

No! Don't put a **tent** in a **swamp**!



Can I **camp** in a **grassland**?

No! Cheetahs **hunt** in the **grassland**.

Help your child recognize these sounds.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الأصوات.

Look and read.

Inside the rainforest

A rainforest is an amazing habitat. There are many different plants, trees, animals, insects and birds. It rains a lot, and it is very hot. This makes it humid. All parts of the rainforest support each other. This is called an "ecosystem".

الغابة المطيرة هي موطن رائع. يوجد بها العديد من النباتات والأشجار والحيوانات والحشرات والطيور المختلفة. إنها تمطر كثيرًا، وشديدة الحرارة. هذا يجعلها رطبة. جميع أجزاء الغابة المطيرة تدعم بعضها البعض. وهذا يسمى بالنظام البيئي.

There are four layers in a rainforest:

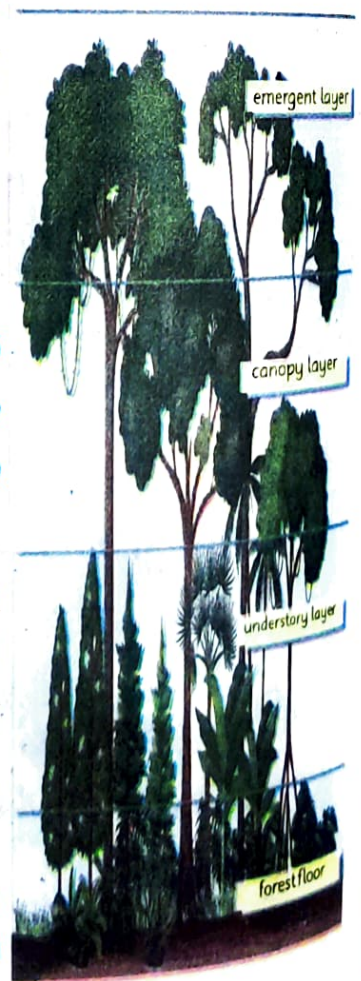
توجد أربع طبقات في الغابة المطيرة:

1. The top layer is called the "emergent layer". This is the top of the trees. Not many animals live here - there are birds (such as macaws), spiders, butterflies and some small monkeys.

تسمى الطبقة العليا "الطبقة الناشئة". هذا هو الجزء العلوي من الأشجار. لا يعيش هنا الكثير من الحيوانات. - هناك طيور "مثل ببغاء المكاو" والعناكب والفراشات وبعض القروود الصغيرة.

2. The "canopy layer" is under the top layer. There is shelter and lots of food such as fruit and nuts here. Lots of animals live in the canopy layer, including sloths, monkeys and birds.

طبقة المظلة تكون تحت الطبقة العليا. يوجد مأوى والكثير من الطعام مثل الفاكهة والمكسرات. يعيش الكثير من الحيوانات في طبقة المظلة، بما فيها حيوانات الدب الكسلان والقروود والطيور.



3. The "understory layer" is under the canopy. There isn't a lot of sun here, so it's dark and humid. Rain falls down through the layers above, but there isn't a lot of sun. There are lots of insects, lizards and frogs. Other larger animals hunt for food in the understory layer.

الطبقة السفلية تحت المظلة. ليس هناك الكثير من أشعة الشمس لذلك هي مظلمة ورطبة. يتساقط المطر عبر الطبقات أعلاه، لكن لا يوجد الكثير من الشمس. هناك الكثير من الحشرات والسحالي والضفادع. تصطاد الحيوانات الكبيرة الأخرى من أجل الطعام في الطبقة السفلى.

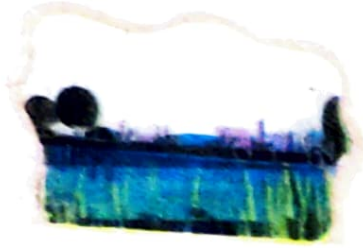
4. On the forest floor, it is very dark. Very little sunlight can get through the trees. Snakes crawl **تزحف** on the rainforest floor. Because it's dark, plants here need to have big leaves so they can get sunlight.

على أرضية الغابة، الجو مظلم جدًا. يمكن أن يمر القليل جدًا من أشعة الشمس عبر الأشجار. تزحف الثعابين على أرض الغابات المطيرة. نظرًا لأنها مظلمة، نحتاج النباتات هنا إلى أوراق شجر كبيرة حتى يمكنها الحصول على ضوء الشمس.

Read again and tick (✓) or cross (×).

- 1 Sloths live in the emergent layer. ()
- 2 There aren't a lot of animals in the emergent layer. ()
- 3 There are lots of things to eat in the canopy layer. ()
- 4 Not many animals live in the canopy layer. ()
- 5 It is dark in the understory layer. ()
- 6 Plants on the forest floor have small leaves. ()

1 Look and complete.



swa__



ca__



grassla__



te__



hu__



wetla__

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

n t
e t



t a w
n e d l



p s a
w m



h n
u t



m a
p c



s n a
d g r l
a s



3 Choose the correct word(s).

Lessons (5 & 6)

- 1 The rainforest top layer is called the (floor - emergent - canopy) layer.
- 2 Sloths live in the (canopy - emergent - floor) layer.
- 3 It's very dark in the (floor - canopy - understory) layer.
- 4 We're going to camp. We need a (swamp - tent - grassland).
- 5 Lizards and frogs live in the (emergent - canopy - understory) layer.
- 6 A lion can (crawl - fly - hunt).
- 7 There are (two - three - four) layers in the rainforest.
- 8 There isn't a lot of sun here, so it's (light - wet - dark).
- 9 Plants have big (ears - leaves - insects), so they can get sunlight.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 The top layer is | a in a wetland. |
| 2 Not many animals | b called the emergent layer. |
| 3 Plants in the forest floor | c live in the top layer. |
| 4 You can't camp | d need to have big leaves. |

5 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 I - in - wetland - Can - camp - a - ?

2 is - amazing - A rainforest - habitat - an - .

3 hunt - Large - for - animals - food - .

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



need - tent - camp

2



cheetahs - hunt

7 Fill in the spaces with:

sunlight - emergent - forest floor - frogs - fruit - humid - sloths

- 1 Birds, butterflies and small monkeys live in the layers.
- 2 There is shelter and lots of in the canopy layer.
- 3 Monkeys, and birds live in the canopy layer.
- 4 The understory layer is and darker than the canopy layer.
- 5 Lizards, and insects live in the understory layer.
- 6 The plants on the have big leaves.
- 7 Very little gets through trees on the forest floor.

8 Complete the following dialogue with:

grassland - can't - four - many

- Nada : How (1) layers are there in the rainforest?
- Asmaa : There are (2) layers.
- Nada : Can I camp in a (3) ?
- Asmaa : No, you (4)

Lesson (7)

Reading Life skills

Listen, point and say.

Changes to habitats

التغيرات في البيئات



drought
الجفاف



deforestation
التصحر (إزالة الغابات)



pollution
التلوث



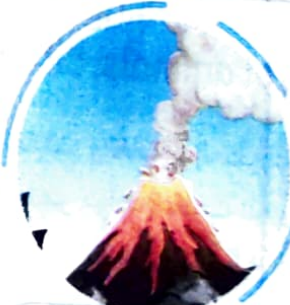
flood
الفيضان



volcanoes
البراكين



fire
حريق



ash
رماد بركاني



building
البناء

Definitions

drought

when there isn't enough water

جفاف

deforestation

cutting down trees

إزالة الغابات

pollution

making land, water or air dirty

تلوث

building

destroying habitats to make homes or offices

البناء

flood

when there is too much rain and water covers the land

فيضان

volcano

when it erupts, ash falls to the ground

بركان

help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

Changes to habitats

Animals and plants live together in balance in different habitats. But what happens when things change? There are lots of reasons for change.

نعيش الحيوانات والنباتات معًا في توازن في مواطن مختلفة. لكن ماذا يحدث عندما تتغير الأشياء؟ هناك الكثير من الأسباب للتغيير.

Human activity النشاط البشري

Deforestation

إزالة الغابات

People cut down forests and rainforests to use the trees, or to make land for farming. This destroys the habitats of hundreds of animals, birds and plants.

يقوم الناس بإزالة الغابات والغابات المطيرة لاستخدام الأشجار، أو لتهيئة الأرض للزراعة. هذا يدمر مواطن مئات الحيوانات والطيور والنباتات.



Pollution

التلوث

Pollution can be on land, in water, or in the air. People leave garbage on the land and in rivers and seas. We put chemicals in rivers and seas, and damage the air with machines and fires.

يمكن أن يحدث التلوث على الأرض أو في الماء أو في الهواء. يترك الناس القمامة على الأرض وفي الأنهار والبحار. نحن نضع المواد الكيميائية في الأنهار والبحار ونفسد الهواء بالآلات والحرائق.



Building

البناء

New buildings for homes, offices and factories can destroy habitats. They can be good for people, but bad for the animals that lose their homes.



من عمليات البناء الجديدة للمنازل والمكاتب والمصانع أن تدمر المواطن الطبيعية. يمكن أن تكون مفيدة، لكنها ضارة للحيوانات التي تفقد مواطنها.

Natural disasters الكوارث الطبيعية

Lesson (7)

Volcanoes

When a volcano erupts, ash falls to the ground and covers it. In the short term, plants can't grow. The ash pollutes the air.

البراكين



عندما ينفجر البركان، يسقط الرماد على الأرض ويغطيها. على المدى القصير، لا يمكن للنباتات أن تنمو. الرماد يلوث الهواء.

Drought

When there isn't enough rain, the ground is dry and plants can't grow. Animals can't find water to drink. Farmers can't grow food.

الجفاف



عندما لا يكون هناك ما يكفي من الأمطار، تكون الأرض جافة والنباتات لا يمكنها النمو. لا تستطيع الحيوانات العثور على الماء للشرب. ولا يستطيع الفلاحون زراعة الطعام.

Flood

In a flood, there is an overflow of water to land that is usually dry. This can happen in heavy rain or a storm. Floods can destroy natural habitats as well as people's homes.

الفيضان



في الفيضان، يحدث تدفق فائض للمياه على الأرض التي عادة تكون جافة. يمكن أن يحدث هذا في هطول أمطار غزيرة أو عاصفة. يمكن أن تدمر الفيضانات البيئات الطبيعية وكذلك منازل الناس.

Fire

Fires can happen in forests or grassland. Fires can destroy many habitats very quickly. The smoke pollutes the air.

النار (الحرائق)



يمكن أن تحدث الحرائق في الغابات أو المراعي العشبية. يمكن أن تدمر الحرائق الكثير من البيئات بسرعة شديدة. يلوث الدخان الهواء.

Positive effects of change

الآثار الإيجابية للتغيير

Read and write the suitable natural disaster.

Volcano - Fire - Flood

Water can bring new nutrients to the land. This helps plants to grow in the future.

يمكن للماء أن يجلب عناصر غذائية جديدة للأرض وهذا يساعد النباتات في النمو في المستقبل.

There are minerals in the ash which are good for the soil. The soil will be healthier after some time.

توجد معادن في الرماد وهي مفيدة للتربة. ستكون التربة أكثر صحة بعد مرور بعض الوقت.



Dead trees and leaves on the forest floor can be burned. This puts important nutrients into the soil.

يمكن حرق الأشجار الميتة والأوراق على أرضية الغابة. وهذا يضع العناصر الغذائية الهامة في التربة.



Read and answer.

Seleem



I don't think we should build twenty new homes next to the lake on the edge of our town. The lake is a habitat for lots of wildlife. There are birds, fish, insects, snakes and frogs. There are lots of different trees and plants. It is also a beautiful place for people to visit and relax. The new homes will destroy this habitat. The machines will pollute the air and the water.

لا أعتقد أننا ينبغي أن نبني عشرين منزلًا جديدًا بجوار البحيرة على حافة مدينتنا. البحيرة موطن للكثير من الحياة البرية. هناك طيور وأسماك وحشرات وثعابين وضفادع. يوجد الكثير من الأشجار والنباتات المختلفة. كما أنه مكان جميل للناس للزيارة والاسترخاء. ستدمر المنازل الجديدة هذا الموطن. سوف تلوث الآلات الهواء والماء.

Adam



I think it is a good idea to build the new homes. People need homes to live in. The city is crowded with too many houses. It will make jobs for lots of people. We can plant new trees after they build the homes. The animals will find somewhere else to live. It will be a beautiful place for people to live in.

أعتقد أنها فكرة جيدة أن نبني منازل جديدة. يحتاج الناس منازل للعيش فيها. المدينة مزدحمة بالعديد من المنازل. ستوفر وظائف للكثير من الناس. يمكننا زرع أشجار جديدة بعد بنائهم للمنازل. سوف تجد الحيوانات مكانًا آخر للعيش فيه. سيكون مكانًا جميلًا للناس للعيش فيه.

① Who is thinking about animals?

② Who is thinking about people?

③ Do you agree with one or both of them?



Activities

1 Look and complete.



de_oresta_ion



poll_t_on



bu_l_ing



vo_ca_o



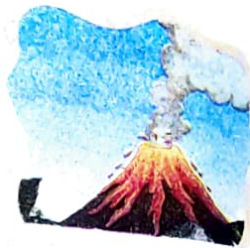
dr__ght



f__od



f_r__



a_h

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

i f
r e



a v n o
l o c



d f o
o l



g d r t
o h u



l p u o
t o i n l



d b u g
i l n i



3 | Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 A (flood - fire - volcano) is an overflow of water.
- 2 When there isn't enough water, this is called a (volcano - drought - flood).
- 3 (Pollution - Volcano - Drought) is making land, water or air dirty.
- 4 (Volcano - Deforestation - Pollution) is cutting down forests.
- 5 We shouldn't (pollute - cut - keep) our environment.
- 6 Flood is a natural (mineral - disaster - fire).
- 7 We shouldn't destroy natural (habits - houses - habitats).

4 | Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Animals and plants | a factories can destroy habitats. |
| 2 There are minerals in the ash | b live together in balance. |
| 3 Fires can happen in | c which are good for the soil. |
| 4 New buildings for homes and | d forests and grassland. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

5 | Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 can - natural - Floods - destroy - habitats - .

2 chemicals - We - in - put - rivers - .

3 nutrients - Water - to the - brings - land - .

6

Look and write a sentence under each picture.



Farmers - food

2



Smoke - air

7

Fill in the space with.

Deforestation - flood - Building - drought - volcano - fire - Pollution

- 1 A is when there is too much rain onto land that is usually dry.
- 2 is when people cut down forests.
- 3 makes the land, air and water dirty.
- 4 new homes can destroy habitats.
- 5 When a erupts, ash falls on the ground.
- 6 When it's dry, can burn grass and trees.
- 7 A is when there isn't enough rain.

8

Complete the following dialogue with:

protect - grow - do - nutrients

- Reem : Water can bring (1) to the land.
- Hana : Really! What (2) nutrients do?
- Reem : They help plants to (3) in the future.
- Hana : Well. We should (4) our environment.

Activities on Unit (4)

1 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

h s l
o t



e r d
t e s



d f o
o l



2 Complete the following dialogue with:

chimpanzees - wildlife - webcam - slowly

Adam : It was great at the (1) park yesterday.

Hana : Yes, I loved seeing the (2)

Adam : I thought the sloth was great! It moved (3)

Hana : Let's look on the (4) We might see it again.

3 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 Lions and cheetahs (build - hunt - swim) other animals.
- 2 Rabbits and foxes (swim - climb - dig) burrows.
- 3 This animal might (live - lives - living) in Africa.
- 4 (Polar - Rainforest - Swamp) habitats are near the equator.
- 5 When there isn't enough water, this is called a (volcano - drought - flood).

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

4 Read and match.

1 Birds live

2 Macaws have

3 Crayfish live

4 The rainforest top layer is

a beautiful colored feathers.

b called the emergent layer.

c in nests.

d in rivers under rocks.

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

A habitat is a particular kind of climate and landscape. There are different habitats all over the world. They have different animals, plants and non-living things. In a polar habitat, there is snow and ice, and everything looks white. There aren't any trees, and the plants are small. Animals can take shelter in burrows. There are rainforests in warm tropical parts of the world. It has lots of animals and trees.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 There is ice and snow in a (polar - wetland - rainforest) habitat.

Everything looks (red - white - green) in polar habitats.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What are the plants in a polar habitat like?

4 Where can animals take shelter in a polar habitat?

6 Copy the following sentence.

Birds build nests in trees.

Unit (5)

All about water

كل شيء عن الماء



Scope and Sequence:

Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية

Language

اللغة

Reading

القراءة

Phonics

الصوتيات

Life skills

المهارات الحياتية

Values

القيم

Issues and challenges

القضايا والتحديات

Integrated cross-curriculum topics

التكامل بين موضوعات المنهج

Water in the environment: ground oasis, spring, soak, surface, river under the ground

The water cycle: condensation, cycle, evaporation, groundwater, precipitation, runoff

- The water has evaporated. - I've never eaten olives.

- Have you ever visited an oasis? - Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

- A brochure about an oasis, a text about rivers, seas and oceans, a text on how plants and animals adapt to water scarcity

Schwa: river, water, polar, cobra

- Participation

- Critical thinking: understanding the links between ideas

- Curiosity - Appreciation of science

- Environmental responsibility - Awareness of duties and rights

- Social studies: saving water

- Science: the water cycle

Lessons
(1 & 2)

Vocabulary Reading

 Listen, point and say.



lake
بحيرة



oasis
واحة



spring
ينبوع (عين مياه)



underground river
نهر جوفي



soak
يغمر بالماء



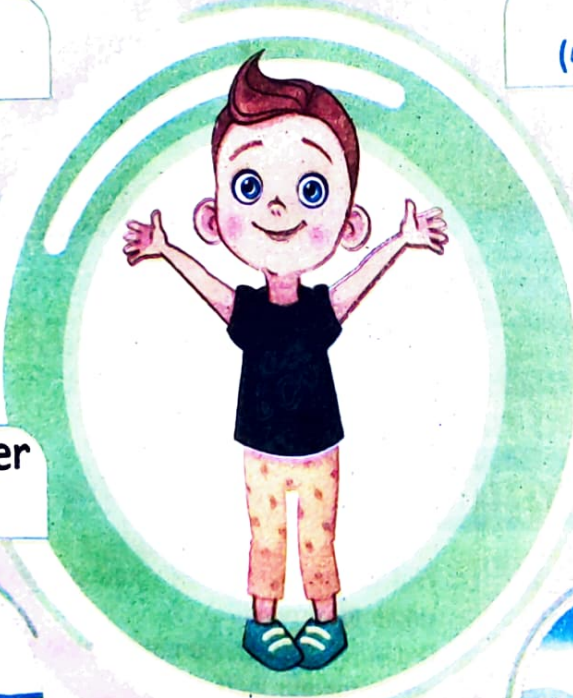
surface
سطح

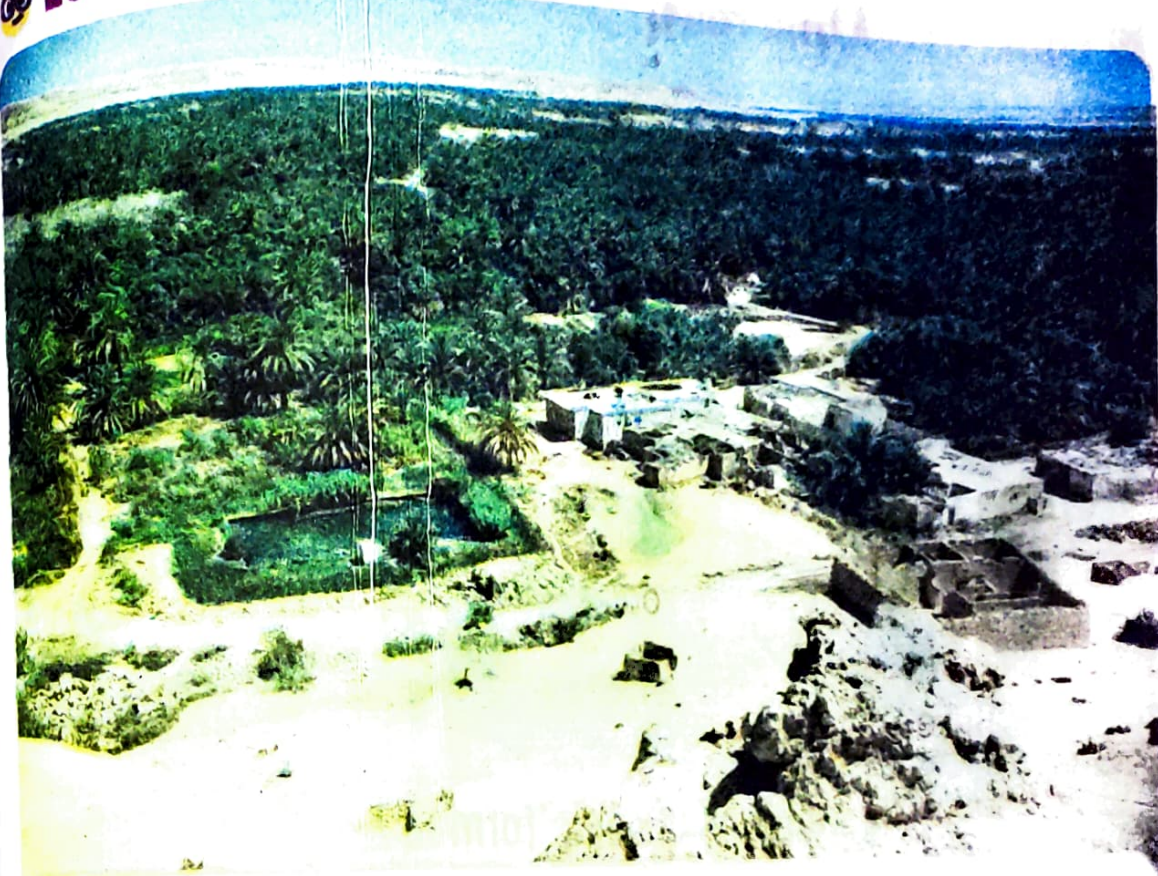


shade
ظل



ground
أرض

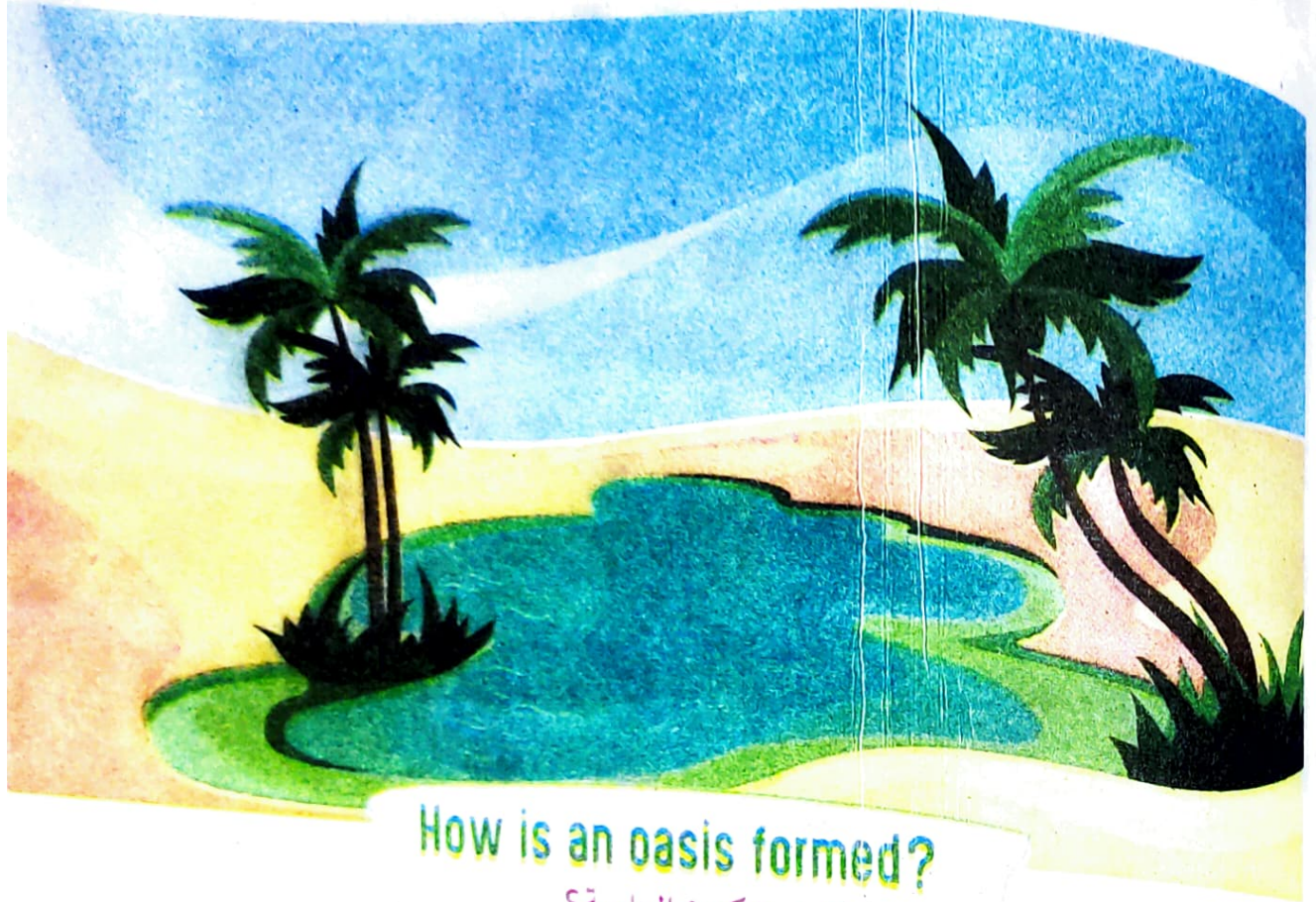




Siwa Oasis is a very interesting place in the desert. People have lived here for thousands of years. The desert is hot and dry, but in an oasis there is water. People can grow trees and plants, and look after animals. I've visited Siwa Oasis with my family. We ate lots of fruit, we saw some monuments and we swam in the spring.

واحة سيوة مكان ممتع للغاية في الصحراء. يعيش الناس هنا منذ آلاف السنين. الصحراء حارة وجافة لكن في الواحة يوجد ماء. يمكن للناس زراعة الأشجار والنباتات، ورعاية الحيوانات. لقد زرت واحة سيوة مع عائلتي. أكلنا الكثير من الفاكهة ورأينا بعض الآثار وسبحنا في الينبوع.

Look, listen and read.



How is an oasis formed?

كيف تتكون الواحة؟

1

Rain falls on the ground.

يسقط المطر على الأرض.

2

The rain soaks into the earth.

يتشرب / ينفذ المطر إلى الأرض.

3

The rain makes rivers and lakes under the ground.

الأمطار تكون أنهار وبحيرات تحت الأرض.

4

Water comes up to the surface of the ground in a spring.

تصعد المياه على سطح الأرض في ينبوع.

5

An oasis is a place where there is a big spring or lots of springs.

الواحة هي المكان الذي يوجد فيها نبع كبير أو الكثير من الينابيع.

 Listen, point and say.



olive tree
شجرة الزيتون



acacia tree
شجرة السنط



tamarisk tree
شجرة الطرفاء



date palm tree
نخلة



Plants
at an oasis
نباتات في الواحة



basil
نبات الريحان



spearmint
نعناع

 Look and read.

What plants can we see at an oasis?

ما هي النباتات التي نستطيع أن نراها في الواحة؟

There are many different plants and trees at an oasis. They make the oasis a special place. The desert is hot, and the trees and plants give people food, medicine, and shade.



يوجد العديد من النباتات والأشجار المختلفة في الواحة. وهذا يجعل من الواحة مكانًا مميزًا. الصحراء حارة والأشجار والنباتات تمد الناس بالطعام والدواء والظل.



Farmers grow tall date palm trees. They can sell dates in Egypt and all over the world. We can cook with dates or eat them whole. People also use the leaves of date palm trees to make baskets.

يزرع الفلاحون أشجار النخيل الطويلة. يمكنهم بيع التمور في مصر وجميع أنحاء العالم. يمكننا أن نطبخ بالتمر أو نأكله كاملاً. يستخدم الناس أيضًا أوراق أشجار النخيل في صنع السلال.

Olive trees grow here as well. People eat olives, cook with olives, and make olive oil. Olives are very good for you. The wood from the olive tree is hard, and we can make useful things from it such as bowls and spoons.



تنمو أشجار الزيتون هنا أيضًا. يأكل الناس الزيتون ويطبخون بالزيتون ويصنعون زيت الزيتون. الزيتون مفيد جدًا لك. الخشب من شجرة الزيتون صلب، ويمكننا أن نصنع منه أشياء مفيدة مثل الأوعية والملاعق.



Acacia trees are old and very special. They provide shelter for people and animals. They protect the oasis from sandstorms.

أشجار السنط قديمة ومميزة جدًا. إنها توفر المأوى للناس والحيوانات. وتحمي الواحة من العواصف الرملية.

Tamarisk trees also protect the oasis from sandstorms. They are smaller than acacia trees and they have pretty pink flowers.

تحمي أشجار الطرفاء الواحة أيضًا من العواصف الرملية. إنها أصغر من أشجار السنط ولديها أزهار وردية جميلة.



People can grow spearmint in an oasis. This is a herb. It can be a medicine, or you can put it in food or drink.

يمكن للناس أن يزرعوا النعناع في الواحة. هذا عُشب يمكن استخدامه كدواء أو يمكنك وضعه في الطعام أو الشراب.

Basil is another herb. It is very good for you. It has lots of vitamins and minerals in it, and you can make medicine from its oil. It's delicious in food, too!

الريحان عُشب آخر مفيد جدًا لك. يحتوي على الكثير من الفيتامينات والمعادن، ويمكنك صنع الدواء من زيته. إنه لذيذ في الطعام أيضًا!





Activities

1 | Look and complete.



p_lm t_ee



oli_e tr_e



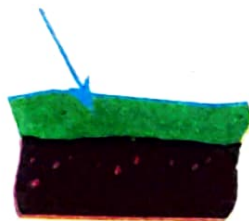
sh_de



o_s_s



l_ke



su_fa_e



s_ak



sp_i_g

2 | Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

s l b
a i



a o i
s s



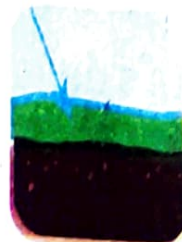
a l
e k



s da
he



uf s e
r ca



a m p l
e r t e



3 | Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 Siwa Oasis is in the (city - desert - town).
- 2 You can make (oil - baskets - soil) with the leaves of palm trees.
- 3 There are lots of (shade - springs - sandstorms) of fresh water in the oasis.
- 4 The trees and plants give people food, medicine and (monuments - shade - ground).
- 5 We can (grow - swim - come) plants.
- 6 Acacia trees provide (shelter - dates - leaves) for people from the sun.
- 7 (Olive - Basil - Shade) is a herb.
- 8 Acacia trees give us (shade - protection - baskets) from storms in the desert.
- 9 People can grow (medicine - shade - spearmint) in an oasis.
- 10 Rain (flies - falls - fills) on the ground.

4 | Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 There are fresh water springs | a from plants and herbs. |
| 2 We can sit in the shade | b at an oasis. |
| 3 We can make medicine | c shelter for people and animals. |
| 4 Acacia trees provide | d of a tree when it is hot. |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 | Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 date - trees - Farmers - palm - grow - .

2 can - People - grow - an oasis - spearmint - in - .

3 in - spring - We - the - swam - .

6 | Read the passage then answer the questions.

Siwa Oasis is a very interesting place in the desert. People have lived here for thousands of years. The desert is hot and dry, but in an oasis there is water. People can grow trees and plants, and look after animals. I've visited Siwa Oasis with my family. We ate lots of fruit. We saw some monuments and we swam in the spring .

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 We swam in the (pool - lake - spring).

2 The desert is hot and (wet - dry - noisy).

B) Answer the following questions.

3 How long have people lived here?

4 Who did you visit Siwa Oasis with?

Lesson (3)

Language use

Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Form

(I / We / You / They / plural noun) + have
(He / She / It / singular noun) + has + P.P (التصريف الثالث)

e.g. I have visited an oasis with my family three times.



e.g. He has climbed a mountain.



Usage

To talk about past experiences.

للتحدث عن الخبرات الحياتية الماضية.

Note:

have = 've
has = 's

Conjugation of verbs

Present

Past

P.P

visit	يزور visited	visited
try	يجرب tried	tried
climb	يتسلق climbed	climbed
walk	يمشي walked	walked
eat	يأكل ate	eaten
take	يأخذ took	taken
see	يرى saw	seen
make	يصنع made	made

Help your child identify the present perfect tense.

Keywords

never

أبداً is used in negative.

تستخدم للنفي.

ever

من قبل is used in question.

تستخدم في السؤال.

e.g. I have never eaten olives.

e.g. Have you ever seen a snake?

Negative

have not / haven't + p.p
has not / hasn't

e.g. I haven't visited an oasis.

e.g. She hasn't climbed a mountain.

(Yes / No) question

Have + (you / we / they / plural noun) + ever + p.p?
Has (he / she / it / singular noun)

e.g. Have you ever walked in the desert?

Yes, I have. No, I haven't.

Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 I have (visits - visited - visiting) Siwa Oasis.
- 2 He (have - having - has) climbed a mountain.
- 3 Have you (never - ever - every) seen a spring?
- 4 I have (never - ever - every) eaten olives.
- 5 I (has - have - having) talked to Hassan.



Activities

1 | Complete the following dialogue with.

haven't - mountain - have - Siwa

Ramy : Have you ever visited (1).....?

Sama : Yes, I (2).....

Ramy : Have you climbed a (3)..... there?

Sama : No, I (4).....

2 | Choose the correct word(s).

1 People have (lived - lives - living) here for thousands of years.

2 He has (climb - climbs - climbed) a mountain.

3 Have you (never - ever - usually) seen a snake?

4 We have (see - saw - seen) a big lake.

5 I (taken - has taken - have taken) photos of the desert.

6 She (isn't - hasn't - doesn't) visited Alexandria.

7 He has (ever - every - never) eaten fresh dates.

8 We (have - are - has) seen lots of trees.

9 They have never (swim - swum - swam) in a river.

10 He (is - have - has) climbed a tree.

11 Has (they - you - she) ever been to an oasis?

12 Have they (ever - never - now) drunk spearmint tea?

13 No, he (never has - has ever - has never) slept in the desert.

14 (Has - Have - Do) you ever made olive oil?

15 (Yes - Not - No), she has never seen a snake.

Unit (5)

3 | Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 you - made - Have - oil - ever - olive - ?

2 olives - I've - eaten - never - .

3 has - tree - She - a - climbed - .

4 | Look and write a sentence under each picture.



never - eaten - dates

2



has - climbed

3



drunk - coffee

4

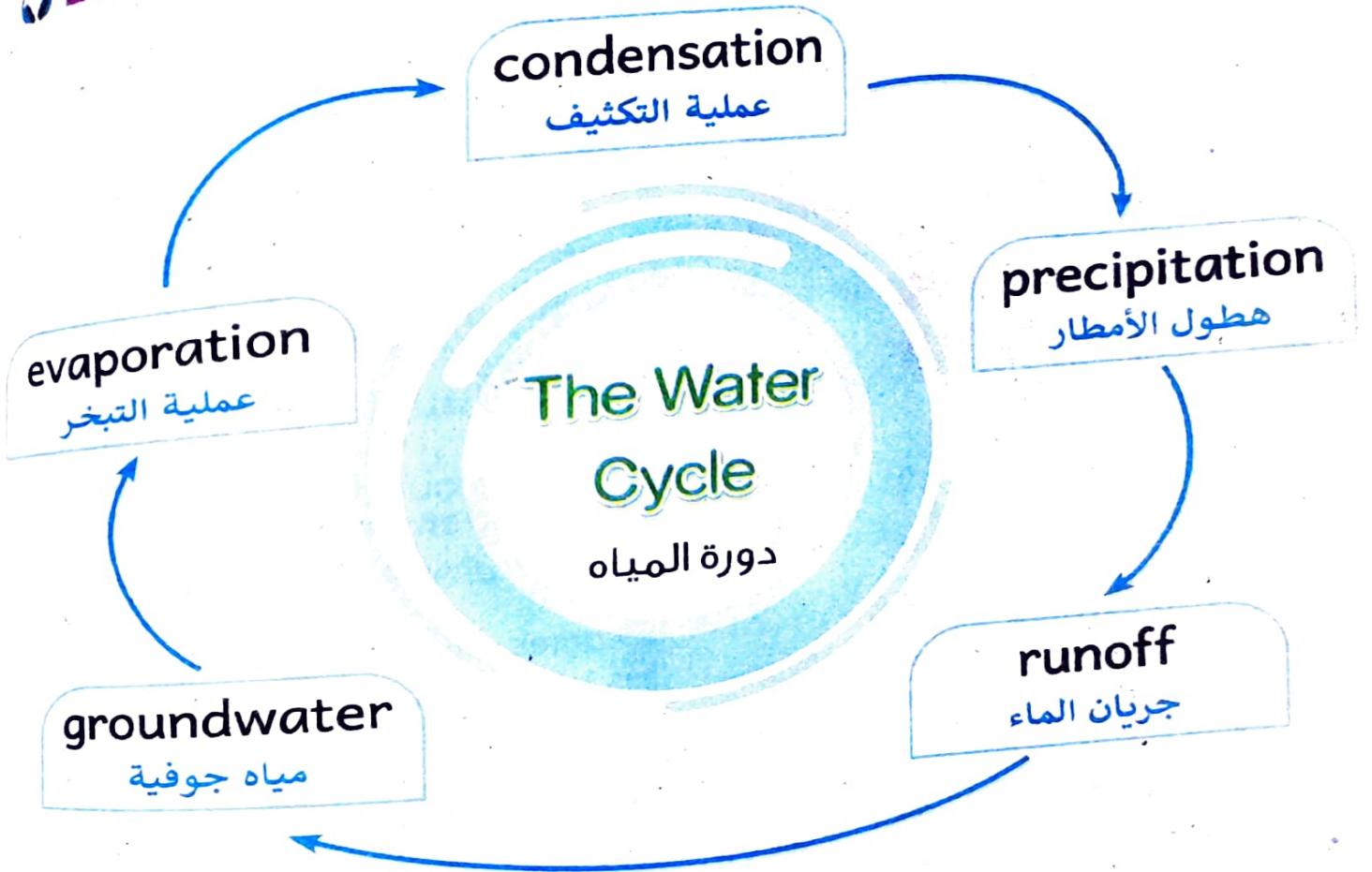


never - visited - oasis

5 | Copy the following sentence.

Have you ever seen a snake?

Listen and repeat.



Vocabulary

vapor	بخار	underground	جوفي
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	rainfall	سقوط المطر
hail	بَرَد	flow	يتدفق

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Unit (5)



Definitions

evaporation The sun turns water into vapor. Vapor rises up into the atmosphere

التبخر

الشمس تحول الماء إلى بخار. يرتفع البخار في الغلاف الجوي

condensation Water vapor rises and starts to cool. It becomes clouds.

التكثيف

يرتفع بخار الماء ويبدأ أن يبرد. ويصبح سُحُب

precipitation Water falls from the clouds as rain, snow or hail

التساقط (هطول المطر)

تسقط المياه من السحب كمطر أو ثلج أو بَرَد

runoff

When rain falls on high ground, it runs down mountains and hills as rivers

جريان المياه

عندما تهطل الأمطار على أرض مرتفعة، فإنها تنساب عبر الجبال والتلال كالأنهار

groundwater

Some water soaks into the ground and flows into rivers and lakes that are under the ground

مياه جوفية

تتسرب بعض المياه إلى الأرض وتتدفق إلى الأنهار والبحيرات الموجودة تحت أرض

water cycle

How water in rivers becomes clouds, then rainfall, then runoff, then rivers that are under the ground

كيف تصبح المياه في الأنهار سحب، ثم هطول المطر ثم جريان الماء، ثم الأنهار تحت

الأرض



AL-BAHER



Listen and read.

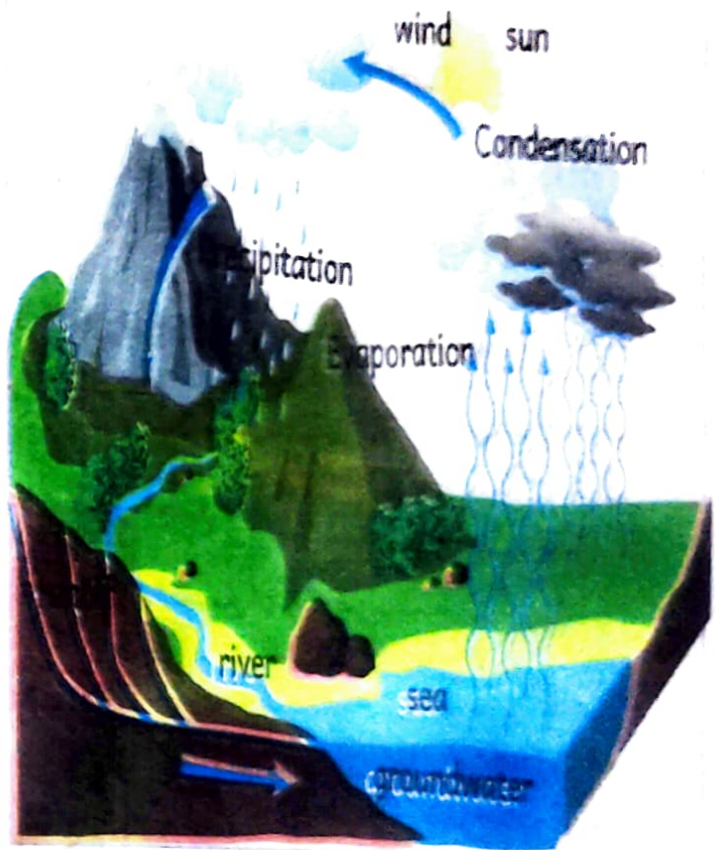
Lesson (4)

The water cycle

Where does water come from? Water travels from the land to the sea, in a process called the **Water Cycle**. These are the stages.

من اين تأتي المياه؟ ينتقل الماء من الأرض إلى البحر في عملية تسمى دورة الماء. هذه هي المراحل.

Evaporation Let's start on the ground. Heat from the sun makes water in the sea, in lakes, and in rivers start to evaporate. The water turns into vapor. This vapor rises up into the atmosphere.



عملية التبخر : لنبدأ من الأرض. تجعل حرارة الشمس المياه في البحر والبحيرات والأنهار تبدأ بالتبخر. يتحول الماء إلى بخار. يرتفع هذا البخار إلى الغلاف الجوي.

Condensation As the air rises, it starts to cool. This makes the water vapor condense into drops of water. These join together to make clouds.

عملية التكثيف : عندما يرتفع الهواء. يبدأ في البرودة. هذا يجعل بخار الماء يتكثف إلى قطرات الماء. تكون سحبا.

Precipitation Wind moves the clouds in the sky. The clouds get bigger and heavier. Precipitation is when water falls from the clouds as rain, snow or hail.

هطول الأمطار: تحرك الرياح السحب في السماء. تصبح السحب أكبر وأثقل. الهطول هو عندما يسقط الماء من السحب كأمطار أو ثلج أو بَرَد.

When rain falls on high ground, it runs down mountains and hills as rivers. This is **runoff**. The rivers start small and narrow. They get deeper and wider as they gather more water. Rivers run to the sea, and the cycle starts again with evaporation.

عندما تهطل الأمطار على أرض مرتفعة، فإنها تنساب عبر الجبال والتلال كالأنهار. هذا ما يُسمى **بجريان الماء**. تبدأ الأنهار صغيرة وضيقة. وتصبح أعمق وأوسع كلما تجمع المزيد من الماء. تنساب الأنهار إلى البحر، وتبدأ دورة الماء مجددًا بالتبخر.

Some water soaks into the ground. This is **groundwater**. It flows into rivers and lakes that are under the ground. These can come back to the surface as a spring. A spring can become a river or a lake. The water evaporates, and the cycle starts again.

تتسرب بعض المياه إلى الأرض. وهذا ما يسمى **بالمياه الجوفية**. تتدفق هذه المياه الجوفية إلى الأنهار والبحيرات الموجودة تحت الأرض. يمكن أن تعود إلى سطح الأرض كينبوع. يمكن أن يصبح ينبوع نهرًا أو بحيرة. تتبخر المياه وتبدأ الدورة مرة أخرى.

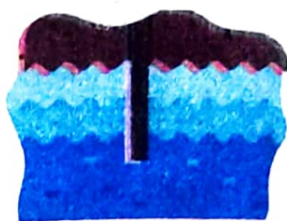


Activities

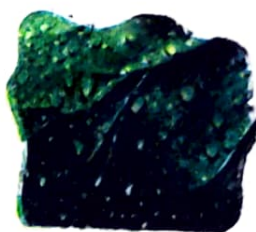
① Look and complete.



r_n_ff



gr_undw_ter



c_nden_ation



e_ap_ration

② Choose the correct word(s).

① (Precipitation - Evaporation - Condensation) is when water falls from clouds as rain.

② Water that lands on the ground and travels in rivers is called (water cycle - runoff - groundwater).

③ Some water soaks into the ground as (evaporation - condensation - groundwater).

④ The sun causes (evaporation - condensation - runoff) of water from the surface of rivers and the sea.

⑤ (Evaporation - Condensation - Precipitation) happens as water vapor rises and gets cooler.

⑥ (Vapor - Groundwater - Wind) flows into rivers and lakes that are under the ground.

⑦ The water in an oasis comes from (seas - pools - rivers) and lakes that are under the ground.

⑧ A spring can become a river or a (sea - lake - pool).

Unit (5)

3 | Read and match.

- 1 Wind moves
- 2 A spring can become
- 3 Some water soaks
- 4 The drops of water join

- a a river or a lake.
- b the clouds in the sky.
- c together to make clouds.
- d into the ground.

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

4 | Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 turns - into - The sun - water - vapor - .

2 can - a river - A spring - become - or - a lake - .

3 come - does - Where - water - from - ?

5 | Read and complete with.

cycle - groundwater - spring - soaks

Some water (1) into the ground. This is (2) It flows into rivers and lakes that are under the ground. These can come back to the surface as a (3) A spring can become a river or a lake. The water evaporates, and the (4) starts again.

Look and read.

Different types of water

أنواع المياه المختلفة

Rivers, Seas, and Oceans

There are two types of liquid water - fresh water and salt water.

هناك نوعان من المياه السائلة - المياه العذبة والمياه المالحة.

Rivers and lakes have fresh water in them.

The water comes from precipitation and springs.



الأنهار والبحيرات بها مياه عذبة. تأتي المياه من هطول الأمطار ومن الينابيع.

Seas and oceans have salt water in them, because rain washes minerals from the land and from rocks. These minerals go into the sea in runoff water. Rivers don't have salt water because the rain keeps fresh water moving through them.

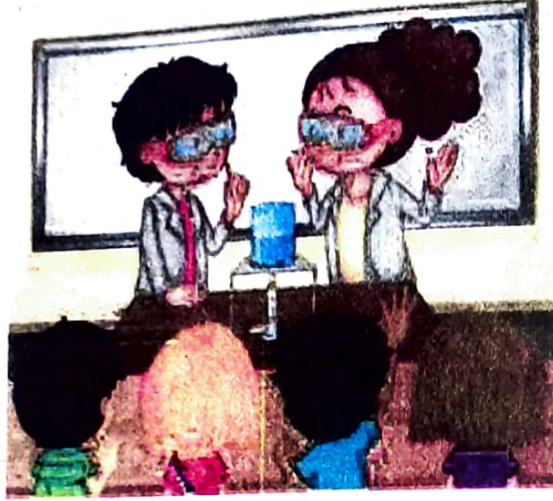


تحتوي البحار والمحيطات على مياه مالحة، لأن المطر يجرف المعادن من الأرض ومن الصخور. تذهب هذه المعادن إلى البحر في عملية جريان الماء. لا تحتوي الأنهار على مياه مالحة لأن المطر يحافظ على حركة المياه العذبة خلالها.

👁️ Look, listen and read.

What can the children see in the experiments?

ماذا يمكن للأطفال أن يروا في التجارب؟



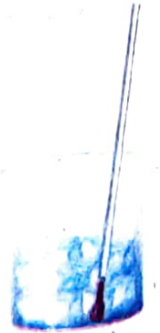
We've done an experiment in our science class.
We put salt water in one beaker, and fresh water
in another beaker. We heated the water in the
beakers. Look what has happened!

لقد أجرينا تجربة في حصة العلوم. وضعنا الماء المالح في دورق، والماء العذب في
دورق آخر. قمنا بتسخين الماء في الأكواب. انظر ماذا حدث!



The water has evaporated and we can see
the salt.

لقد تبخر الماء ويمكننا رؤية الملح.



The water has evaporated. The beaker is
empty.

لقد تبخر الماء. الدورق فارغ.



The water facts

- 1 The Dead Sea is a small sea, and it is surrounded by land. The water here has a lot of salt in it. Because of the salt, you can float in the Dead Sea!



البحر الميت هو بحر صغير تحيط به الأرض. المياه هنا بها كثير من الملح.
بسبب الملح يمكنك أن تطفو في البحر الميت!

- 2 The water in an oasis is fresh. It comes from lakes and rivers that are under the ground.



المياه في الواحة عذبة. إنها تأتي من البحيرات والأنهار الموجودة تحت الأرض.

- 3 Ice is frozen water. In polar regions, when ice is formed from salt water, the salt is squeezed out and only the water freezes. This means the ice isn't salty - you can melt the water and drink it!



الجليد عبارة عن ماء متجمد. في المناطق القطبية، عندما يتشكل الجليد من الماء المالح، يتم ضغط الملح ويتجمد الماء فقط. هذا يعني أن الثلج ليس مالحًا. يمكنك إذابة الماء وشربه.

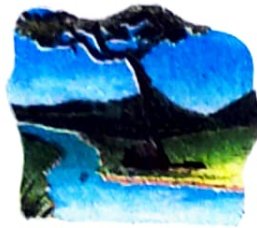


Activities

1 | Look and complete.



s _ lt



r _ v _ r



s _ a



w _ ter



f _ oz _ n



v _ p _ r

2 | Choose the correct word(s).

- ① Ice is (frozen - liquid - salt) water.
- ② Rivers and lakes have (fresh - salt - frozen) water.
- ③ Seas have (fresh - salt - frozen) water.
- ④ You can (float - land - heat) in the Dead Sea.
- ⑤ There are (two - three - four) types of liquid water.
- ⑥ Rain washes minerals from the (rivers - land - lakes) into the sea.

3 | Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

① into - vapor - Water - turns - .

② is - land - The Dead Sea - surrounded - by - .

③ frozen - is - Ice - water - .

4 Read the passage then answer the questions.

There are two types of liquid water - fresh water and salt water. Rivers and lakes have fresh water in them. The water comes from precipitation and springs. Seas and oceans have salt water in them, because rain washes minerals from the land and from rocks. These minerals go into the sea in runoff water. Rivers don't have salt water because the rain keeps fresh water moving through them.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The rain keeps (fresh - salt - frozen) water moving in rivers.
- 2 There are (seven - five - two) types of liquid water.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why do seas and oceans have salt water?

- 4 Where do minerals go?

5 Fill in the spaces with:

experiment - small - liquid - frozen

- 1 Ice is water.
- 2 There are two types of water.
- 3 The Dead Sea is a sea.
- 4 We do an in our science class.

Lessons
(6 & 7)

Learn Sounds with Busy Bee! Reading



Phonics

Listen and repeat.



river
نهر



water
ماء



shelter
مأوى



doctor
طبيب



polar
قطبي



cobra
أفعى الكوبرا



acacia
شجرة السنط



cheetah
الفهد الصياد

Look and read.

The cheetah is taking shelter under an acacia tree. It's looking at the water under the cobra.



1 Listen, complete and match. Then say

er - ar - ra

1 riv _ _

2 pol _ _

3 wat _ _

4 cob _ _

a



b



c



d



2 Listen and circle the word with the /ə/ word.

1 sea

acacia

coffee

2 cheetah

try

buy

3 through

statue

under

4 ride

shelter

night

5 mommy

happy

doctor

Look and listen.



cactus
صبار



roots
جذور



hooves
خف الجمل



wetland
أرض رطبة



spine
شوكة



hollow tube
أنبوب مجوف



hump
سنام



swamp
مستنقع



sand
رمل



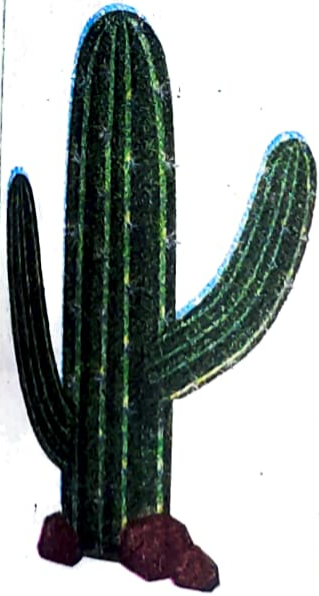
camel
جمل

Plants and animals

Plants and animals **adapt** to their habitat. This means that they change the way they behave in order to **survive** in their habitat. We know that plants need water to grow, and animals need to drink water to live. But some plants and animals live in the desert. How?



تكيف النباتات والحيوانات مع بيئتها. هذا يعني أنهم يغيرون الطريقة التي يسلكونها من أجل البقاء في بيئتهم. نحن نعلم أن النباتات تحتاج الماء للنمو، والحيوانات تحتاج أن تشرب الماء لتعيش. لكن بعض النباتات والحيوانات تعيش في الصحراء. كيف؟



Cactus plants have adapted to survive in the desert. Their roots are close to the surface and they spread out a long way in the ground. They can catch a lot of rainwater when it does fall. Inside a cactus, there are hollow tubes. These can hold water and store it for many years. A cactus plant has thick skin, so the water inside the tubes can't evaporate. They have spines to protect them. These stop animals drinking the water inside the cactus.

تكيفت نباتات الصبار للبقاء على قيد الحياة في الصحراء. جذورها قريبة من السطح وتتفرع لمسافات طويلة في الأرض. يمكنها الحصول على الكثير من مياه الأمطار عندما تسقط. داخل الصبار توجد أنابيب مجوفة. وهذه الأنابيب المجوفة يمكنها الاحتفاظ بالمياه وتخزينها لسنوات عديدة. نبات الصبار له جلد سميك. لذلك لا يمكن أن يتبخر الماء داخل الأنابيب. لديها أشواك لحمايتها فهي تمنع الحيوانات من شرب الماء الموجود داخل الصبار.

Unit (5)

Camels have adapted to survive very well in the desert. They can drink enough water to last for a week. They don't often sweat, so they don't lose water. They can store fat and nutrients in their hump, so they don't have to eat for months. They have wide hooves, so it is easier to walk on sand. They have hair around their eyes, ears and nose to keep the sand out. The desert is hot in the day, but very cold at night. They have thick fur to keep them warm at night.



تكيفت الإبل لتعيش بشكل جيد للغاية في الصحراء. فيمكن لهذه الحيوانات شرب كمية كافية من الماء تدوم لمدة أسبوع. وهم لا يتعرقون في كثير من الأحيان لذلك لا يفقدون الماء. يمكنها تخزين الدهون والعناصر الغذائية في سنامها. لذلك لا تضطر إلى تناول الطعام لشهور. لديها حوافر عريضة، لتمكنها من المشي بسهولة على الرمال. لديها شعر حول أعينها وأذانها وأنوفها لإبعاد الرمال. الصحراء جوها حار في النهار، لكنها شديدة البرودة في الليل. لذا الجمال لديها فرو كثيف لإبقائها دافئة في الليل.

Adapting to a wetland

Plants and animals have adapted to living in a wetland. تكيفت النباتات والحيوانات للعيش في الأرض الرطبة.

Lots of plants have hollow stems.

كثير من النباتات لها سيقان مجوفة.

Animals use camouflage for protection and to hunt for food.

تستخدم الحيوانات التمويه من أجل الحماية ولكي تصطاد من أجل الطعام.

Crocodiles can hide with their eyes and nose above the water.

يمكن أن تختبئ التماسيح وأعينها وأنفها فوق الماء.



Look and complete.



c _ br _



shelt _



wat _



r _ v _ r



doct _



acaci _



c _ c _ us



ch _ et _ h

Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

s v o h
o e



h t c
e h e a



o p
r a l



p u
h m



d a
s n



t o r
o s



3 | Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 The cheetah is taking shelter (in - on - under) an acacia tree.
- 2 Plants and animals adapt to thier (house - school - habitat).
- 3 Cactus plants have (planted - helped - adapted) to survive in the desert.
- 4 Cactus have (spines - arms - legs) to stop animals eating them.
- 5 Inside a cactus, there are (small - big - hollow) tubes.
- 6 Camels have (small - narrow - wide) hooves.
- 7 A cactus plant has thick (skin - leaves - flowers).
- 8 Camels have thick (fur - coat - skin) to keep them warm at night.
- 9 Camels store fat and nutrients in their (necks - heads - humps).
- 10 There are hollow (tubes - spines - roots) inside a cactus where they store water.
- 11 The (leaves - stems - roots) of a cactus are close to the surface of the ground.
- 12 Camels have (humps - fur - hair) around their eyes and nose to keep out the sand.

4 | Read and match.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 Cactus plants have adapted | a to keep water inside. |
| 2 A cactus has thick skin | b to survive in the desert. |
| 3 Camels can store fat | c they don't lose water. |
| 4 Camels don't sweat, so | d in their humps. |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

5 Fill in the spaces with:

desert - camouflage - habitat - store

- 1 Animals adapt to their
- 2 The is hot in the day.
- 3 Camels can water for a long time.
- 4 Animals use for protection.

6 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Cactus plants have adapted to survive in the desert. Their roots are close to the surface and they spread out a long way in the ground. They can catch a lot of rainwater when it downfalls. Inside a cactus, there are hollow tubes. These can hold water and store it for many years. A cactus plant has thick skin, so the water inside the tubes can't evaporate. They have spines to protect them. These stop animals drinking the water inside the cactus.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 A cactus has thick (ears - eyes - skin) to keep water inside.
- 2 The cactus roots (survive - store - spread) out a long way in the ground.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What can cactus plants catch?

- 4 Why do they have spines?

Lessons (8 & 9)

Skills

CLIL: Science: Rainfall around the world



Seasons

فصول السنة



winter

الشتاء



spring

الربيع



summer

الصيف



fall

الخريف



Definitions

desert

الصحراء

It's very hot and it doesn't often rain here.

الجو حار جدًا ولا تمطر كثيرًا.

tropical zone

المنطقة الاستوائية

It is warm and there is a lot of rain for most of the year.

الجو دافئ وهناك أمطار كثيرة معظم السنة.

wetland

مستنقع / أرض رطبة

There is always water on the ground.

يوجد دائمًا ماء على الأرض.

polar zone

المنطقة القطبية

The water here is ice.

الماء هنا يكون جليدًا.

temperate zone

المنطقة المعتدلة

There is a lot of rain in fall and winter, but there is less in spring and summer.

توجد أمطار كثيرة في فصل الخريف والشتاء، ولكن هناك أمطار أقل في فصلي الربيع والصيف.

Some countries have four seasons: spring, summer, fall and winter. It might rain a lot in fall and winter, and not as much in spring and summer. These are countries farther away from the equator, in the temperate zones.



بعض الدول لديها أربعة فصول: فصل الربيع والصيف والخريف، والشتاء. قد تمطر كثيرًا في الخريف والشتاء وليس كثيرًا في فصل الربيع والصيف. وهذه هي البلدان البعيدة عن خط الاستواء وتقع في المنطقة المعتدلة.

Some countries have two seasons - the wet season and the dry season. These are countries closer to the equator, in tropical zones. It rains a lot for six months, then there is less rain for six months.

بعض الدول لديها فصلان - فصل ممطر وفصل جاف. هذه الدول هي الأقرب من خط الاستواء في المناطق الاستوائية. تمطر كثيرًا لمدة ستة أشهر، يكون هناك مطر أقل لمدة ستة أشهر.

Remember!**How to say large numbers.**

كيف تقرأ الأرقام الكبيرة

We say:

48	forty-eight
352	three hundred and fifty-two
3522	three thousand, five hundred and twenty-two.
4,963	four thousand, nine hundred and sixty-three

Practice saying these numbers: 4,480 2,340 508 421

Write the numbers as words.

① 48

② 837

③ 211

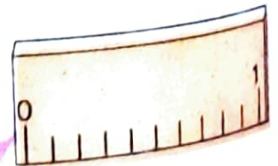
④ 1,062

⑤ 605

⑥ 4,963

Tip!

Look at your ruler. How many millimeters are there in a centimeter?



There are 10 millimeters (mm) in a centimeter
 $1 \text{ cm} = 10 \text{ mm}$

Rainfall around the world

سقوط الأمطار حول العالم

Look and read.

Different countries around the world have different amounts of rain. We measure this in millimeters (mm) per year.

الدول المختلفة حول العالم لديها كميات مختلفة من الأمطار. نقيس هذا بالمليمترات (مم) في العام.



Egypt

Rainfall (mm per year)

51

Atacama Desert, Chile

12

Colombia

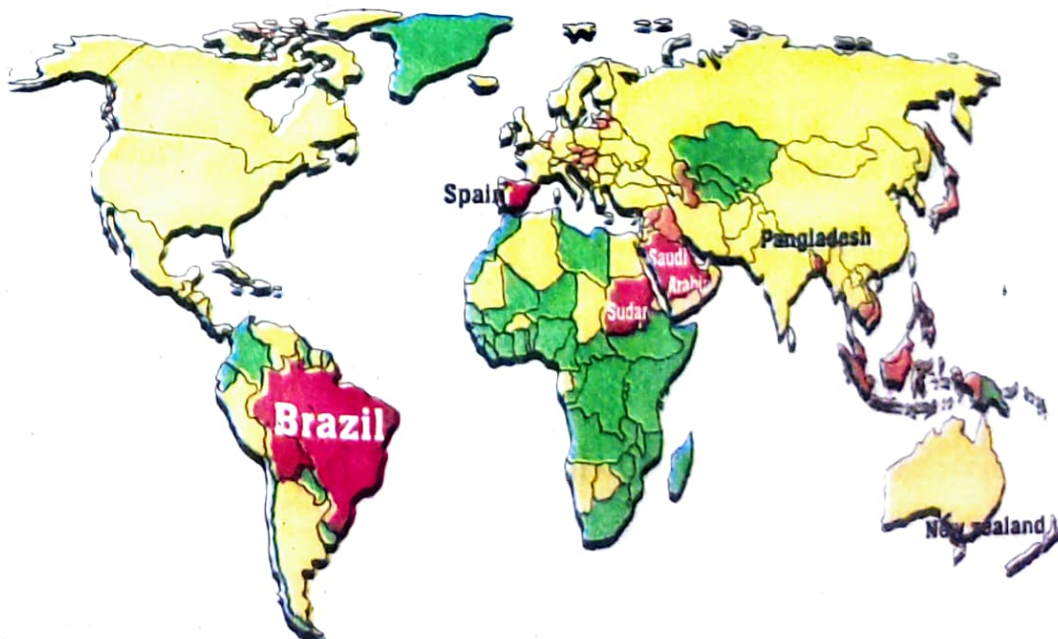
3.240

Australia

534

The United Kingdom

1.220



Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

Language

How much?

كم كمية



How much rainfall does Sudan have a year?

ما مقدار الأمطار التي تسقط على السودان في العام؟



It has 250 millimeters a year.

٢٥٠ ملليمتر سنوياً.

New Zealand

1.732 mm/year

Sudan

250 mm/year

Bangladesh

2.666 mm/year

Spain

636 mm/year

Brazil

1.761 mm/year

Saudi Arabia

59 mm/year

Look and answer.



How much rainfall does Spain have a year?

It has a year.



How much rainfall does Bangladesh have a year?

It has a year.



How much rainfall does Brazil have a year?

It has a year.





Activities

1 | Look and complete.



sp _ _ ng



s _ m _ er



f _ | _



w _ n _ er

2 | Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 It doesn't often rain in the (desert - wetland - polar zone).
- 2 There is a lot of rain in the (polar - temperate - tropical) zone.
- 3 There is water on the ground in the (wetland - desert - polar) zone.
- 4 The water is ice in the (tropical - temperate - polar) zone.
- 5 How (much - many - old) rainfall does Sudan have?
- 6 We measure rainfall in (millimeters - kilos - meters).

3 | Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 There are 10 millimeters | a are countries. |
| 2 How much rainfall | b in fall and winter. |
| 3 It might rain a lot | c does Egypt have? |
| 4 Spain and Brazil | d in a centimeter. |

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 | Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 countries - Some - closer to - equator - are - the - .

2 less - the desert - There - rain - is - in - .

3 Brazil - How much - have - rainfall - does - a year - ?

5 | Read the passage then answer the questions.

Some countries have four seasons: spring, summer, fall and winter. It might rain a lot in fall and winter, and not as much in spring and summer. These are countries farther away from the equator, in the temperate zones. Some countries have two seasons - the wet season and the dry season. These are countries closer to the equator, in tropical zones. It rains a lot for six months, then there is less rain for six months.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 Some countries have four (days - weeks - seasons).

2 It might rain a lot in fall and (winter - summer - spring).

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What are the four seasons of the year?

4 Which countries have two seasons?

Activities on Unit (5)

1 Look and complete.



s _ r i _ g



o _ s _ s



o _ l i v e t _ e e



v _ p _ r

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

o l r



a p

c a r



b o

e i r



v r

3 Complete the following dialogue with.

What - ever - oasis - have

Menna : Have you (1) been to the desert?

Ola : Yes, I (2)

Menna : (3) did you do there?

Ola : I visited an (4)

4 Choose the correct word(s).

1 Siwa Oasis is in the (town - city - desert).

2 We have (saw - seen - see) a big lake.

3 (Precipitation - Evaporation - Condensation) is when water falls from clouds as rain.

4 Rivers don't have (fresh - frozen - salt) water.

5 How (many - much - old) rainfall does Egypt have a year?

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (5)

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Camels have adapted to survive very well in the desert. They can drink enough water to last for a week. They don't often sweat, so they don't lose water. They can store fat and nutrients in their humps, so they don't have to eat for months. They have wide hooves, so it is easier to walk on sand. They have hair around their eyes, ears and nose to keep the sand out. They have thick fur to keep them warm at night.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Camels adapted to (store - survive - sweat) in the desert.
- 2 Camels can store fat and nutrients in their (hooves - fur - humps).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why is it easier for camels to walk on sand?
- 4 Why do camels have thick fur?

6 Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Basil has vitamins | a) is a small sea. |
| 2 The Dead Sea | b) and minerals in it. |
| 3 Cactus plants have adapted to | c) have four seasons. |
| 4 Some countries | d) survive in their habitat. |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

7 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



cactus - spines



palm trees - oasis

Unit (6)

What is a flood? ما الشيطان؟



Scope and Sequence:

Vocabulary	المفردات المفوية	Water engineering: barrier, canal, dam, drain, pipe, pump, sandbag
Language	اللغة	Verbs: collapse, install, minimize, predict, protect, ruin, warn, wash away
Reading	القراءة	Adjectives: bossy, brave, calm, caring, cooperative, cowardly, funny, generous, lazy, mean, moody, polite, responsible, selfish, wise
Phonics	الصوتيات	- There is too much water There isn't enough water
Life skills	المهارات الحياتية	- There are too many cars There aren't enough trees
Values	القيم	- An interview with an emergency responder; a text about farming in dry areas
Issues and challenges	القضايا والتحديات	- ous , danger ous gener ous nerv ous
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	التكامل عبر موضوعات المنهج	- Problem-solving: suggesting solutions to solve problems
		- Collaboration: helping others
		- Curiosity
		- Sustainable development Environmental responsibility
		- Science: agricultural science
		- Social Studies: water engineering in the past and today; the role

Lessons (1 & 2)

Listening and reading Vocabulary



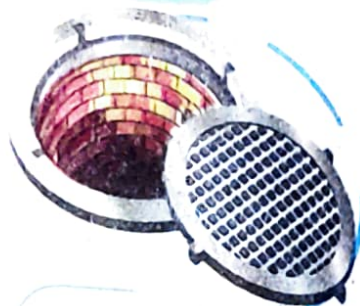
barrier
حاجز



sandbags
أكياس رمل



dam
سد



drain
مصرف / بالوعة



flood
فيضان



canal
قناة / ترعة



pump
مضخة



pipe
ماسورة

Definitions

dam

It stops water in a river from moving forward.

يمنع الماء في النهر من الاندفاع للأمام.

canal

This is a river that people build.

قناة / ترعة

barrier

It stops water in the street and protects buildings.

هذا نهر يبنيه الناس.

pump

People use this to take water out of a building in a flood.

يوقف الماء في الشارع ويحمي المباني.

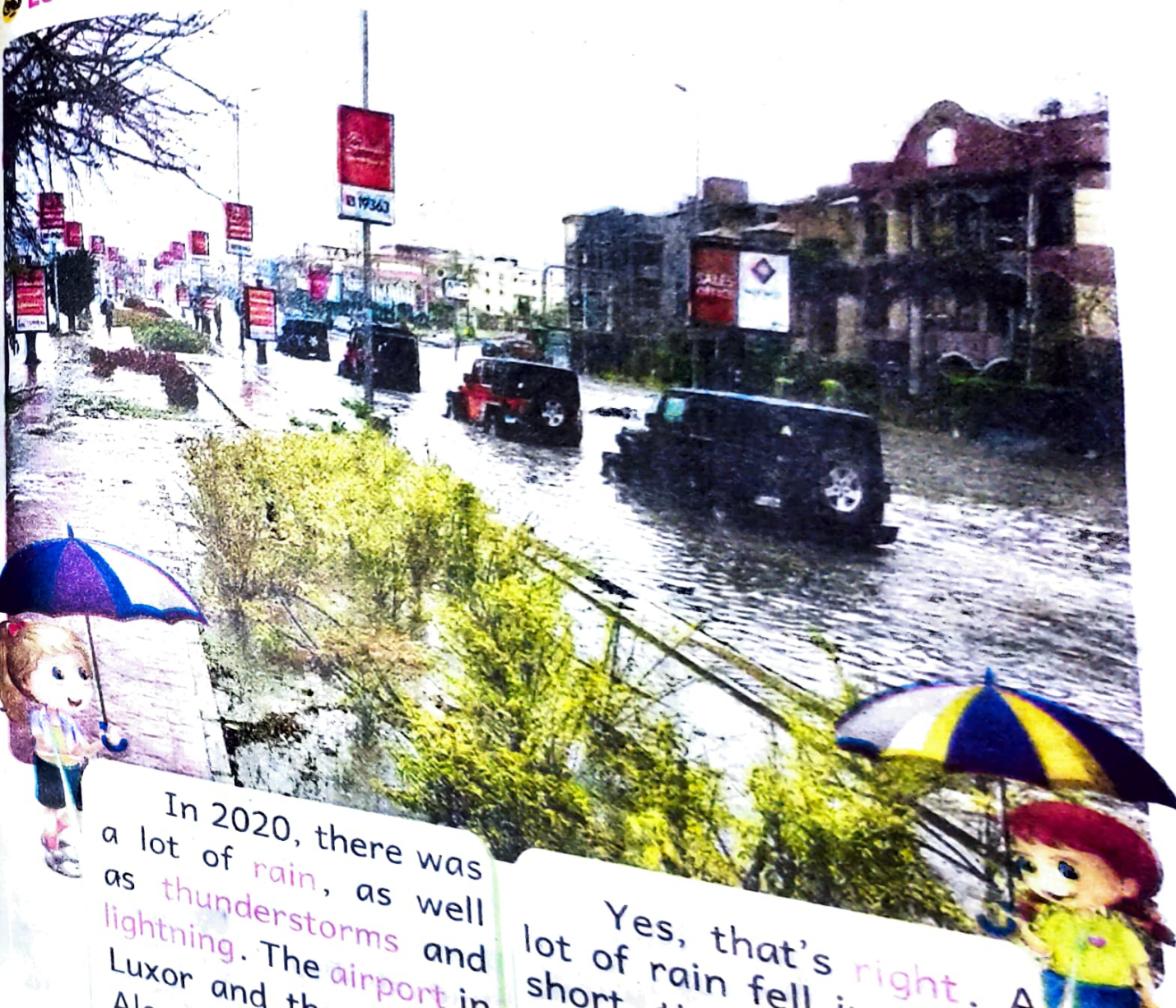
pipe

Water travels through this under or above...

يستخدم الناس هذا لسحب المياه من مبنى في فيضان.

drain

Look, listen and read.



In 2020, there was a lot of rain, as well as thunderstorms and lightning. The airport in Luxor and the

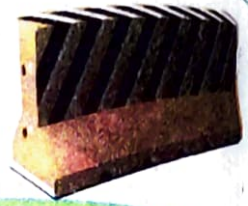
Yes, that's right. A lot of rain fell in short

Unit (6)

Look, listen and read.

In a flood, people can put up a **barrier** to stop water in the street.

في حالة حدوث فيضان، يمكن للناس وضع حاجز لإيقاف المياه في الشارع.



Water on the **surface** of streets can go down a drain.

يمكن أن تنصرف المياه الموجودة في الشوارع إلى البالوعة.



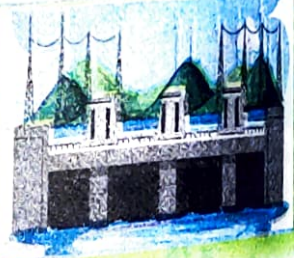
You can use a **pump** to take water out of a building in a flood.

يمكنك استخدام مضخة لسحب المياه من مبنى في حالة الفيضان.



A **dam** stops the flow of water in a river.

السد يوقف تدفق المياه في النهر.



Water moves in **pipes** under the ground or above the ground.

ينتقل الماء في المواسير تحت الأرض أو فوقها.



A **canal** is a river that people build, so they can move water to where they need it.

القناة هو نهر يبنيه الناس، حتى يتمكنوا من نقل المياه إلى حيث يحتاجون إليها.



People put **sandbags** in front of houses and buildings to keep water out.

يضع الناس أكياس الرمل أمام المنازل والمباني لإبعاد المياه.



Activities

1 Look and complete:



bar_i_r



c_na



d_m



dr__n



p_p_



p__p



s_ndba_s



flo__

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

a n l
c a



a m
d



p e
i p



a i n
r d



m p
u p



s d n a
s a b g



3 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 People put (sandbags - canals - dams) in front of houses and buildings to keep water out.
- 2 A (dam - barrier - drain) stops water in a river from moving forward.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

- 3 Water on the surface of streets can go down a (drain - barrier - dam).
- 4 Water moves in (pipes - sandbags - pumps) under the ground or above the ground.
- 5 You can use a (dam - pump - drain) to take water out of a building in a flood.
- 6 A (pump - canal - dam) is a river that people build, so they can move water to where they need it.
- 7 In a flood, people can put up a (pipe - barrier - pump) to stop water in the street.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1 In 2020, there was | a flooded. |
| 2 The airport | b a lot of rain. |
| 3 There was too | c in Luxor was closed. |
| 4 The streets were | d much water. |
- 1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

5 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

- 1 in Alexandria - closed - The ports - were - and - Sharm el-Sheikh - .

- 2 we - do - need - Why - in - sandbags - a flood - ?

- 3 can - protect - Barriers - buildings - .

6 Read the passage, then answer the questions.

In 2020, there was a flood in Egypt. There was a lot of rain, as well as thunderstorms and lightning. The airport in Luxor and the ports in Alexandria and Sharm el-Sheikh were closed. A lot of rain fell in a very short time. There was too much water, and the streets and buildings in Cairo and other places flooded.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 In (2019 - 2018 - 2020), there was a flood in Egypt.
- 2 There was (a lot - little - less) of rain.

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What places were closed because of the flood?

4 What happened to the streets and buildings?

7 Complete the following dialogue with:

keep - flood - river - sandbags

Mariam : What is a (1) _____ ?

Mona : It's a large amount of water covering an area.

Mariam : Why do we need (2) _____ in a flood?

Mona : To (3) _____ water out of buildings.

Mariam : What does a dam do?

Mona : It stops the flow of water in a (4) _____.

Lesson (3)

Language use

Countable nouns

الأسماء التي تعد

They have singular and plural forms.

أسماء لها مفرد و جمع.



a tree - tree **s**



a ruler - ruler **s**



Uncountable nouns

الأسماء التي لا تعد

They don't have a plural form.

ليس لها صيغة جمع.

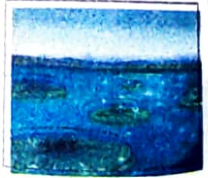
water



paper



rain



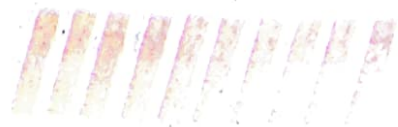
too many

كثير جدًا

تستخدم مع الأسماء التي تُعد (جمع).

There are + too many + plural noun (اسم جمع)

There are too many rulers.



too much

كثير جدًا

تستخدم مع الأسماء التي لا تُعد.

There is + too much + (اسم لا يعد)

There is **too much** water.**not enough**

غير كافٍ

تستخدم مع الأسماء التي تُعد والتي لا تُعد.

There + isn't / aren't + enough (اسم لا يعد)
(اسم جمع)

There **isn't enough** water.There **aren't enough** pencils.

Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 There isn't (many - too many - enough) water.
- 2 There is (many - too much - too many) paper.
- 3 There are (much - too much - too many) rulers.
- 4 There aren't (too much - enough - much) cups.
- 5 There isn't enough (sugar - pencils - cars).

Help your child identify countable and uncountable nouns.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأسماء التي تُعد والأسماء التي لا تُعد.

1 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 There is (too much - too many - many) water.
- 2 There isn't (too many - many - enough) paper.
- 3 There are (too much - too many - much) pencils.
- 4 There are (too many - too much - much) people.
- 5 There aren't enough (pencil - a pencil - pencils).
- 6 There aren't (much - little - enough) rulers.
- 7 There is (to - too - two) much tea.
- 8 The bag is heavy. There are too (much - more - many) books in it.
- 9 There is too much (salt - cars - bags).
- 10 I can see too many (paper - water - cars).
- 11 It's dry. There (is - isn't - aren't) enough water.
- 12 We have too (much - many - more) milk.
- 13 There (isn't - aren't - is) enough apples.
- 14 There (are - aren't - isn't) enough juice.
- 15 There aren't enough (fig - figs - a fig).
- 16 There are too (many - much - enough) trees.
- 17 We have too (enough - many - much) paper.
- 18 There is too much (books - coffee - cakes).

2 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 are - many - There - too - pencils - .

2 rulers - There - enough - aren't - .

3 is - water - too - There - much - .

4 milk - enough - isn't - There - .

3 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



enough - water



too many - trees

4 Look, read and circle.



There are too many cars.

There aren't enough cars.



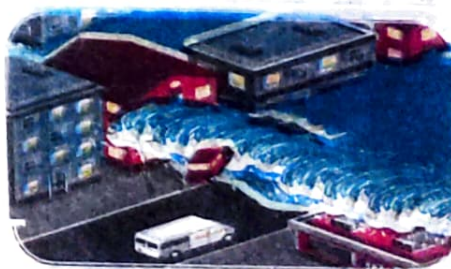
There is too much water.

There isn't enough water.



There are too many people.

There aren't enough people.



There is too much water.

There isn't enough water.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson
(4)

VOCABULARY

 Listen, point and say.



warn
يحذر



collapse
ينهار



install
يثبت / يُركب



wash away
يجرف / يزيل



minimize
يُقلل



meteorologist
عالم أرصاد جوية



ruin
يدمر



protect
يحمي



Definitions

ruin	يدمر	to damage or destroy something	أن تُلَف أو تدمر شيئاً ما
wash away	يجرف	to carry something away with water	يحمل شيئاً بعيداً بالماء
collapse	ينهار	to fall down	يسقط
protect	يحمي	to keep something safe	يحافظ على سلامة شيء
predict	يتنبأ	to say what might happen in the future	أن تقول ما قد يحدث في المستقبل
warn	يُحذّر	to tell people that something bad will happen, so they can prepare	أن تخبر الناس أن شيئاً سيئاً سيحدث، حتى يتمكنوا من الاستعداد
install	يُثبّت / يُركّب	to put something in	أن تضع شيئاً ما
minimize	يُقلّل	to make something smaller or less	أن تجعل شيئاً ما أصغر أو أقل
meteorologists	علماء الأرصاد الجوية	people who study the weather	الناس الذين يدرسون الطقس

Look and read.

Negative effects of flooding

ruin
collapse
wash away

Positive things we can do

protect
minimize
predict
warn
install

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

When there are **floods**, there can be big **problems**. Flood water can ruin homes, shops, and offices. It can **wash away** roads or make **bridges** and homes **collapse**. It's important for **engineers** and scientists to find ways to **protect** everyone from floods.



عندما يكون هناك فيضانات، يمكن أن تحدث مشاكل كبيرة، ويمكن أن تدمر مياه الفيضانات المنازل والمتاجر والمكاتب. يمكن أن تجرف الطرق أو تتسبب في انهيار الجسور والمنازل. من المهم إيجاد طرق لحماية الجميع من الفيضانات من قبل المهندسين والعلماء.

Meteorologists are people who study the weather. They can watch what is happening and predict when floods will start. They can warn people to put up barriers or use sandbags to keep their homes safe. They can send these warnings on cell phones, so everyone gets them quickly.

علماء الأرصاد الجوية هم الأشخاص الذين يدرسون الطقس. يمكنهم مراقبة ما يحدث والتنبؤ ببدء الفيضانات. يمكنهم تحذير الناس لكي يضعوا حواجز أو يستخدموا أكياس الرمل للحفاظ على منازلهم آمنة. يمكنهم إرسال هذه التحذيرات على الهواتف المحمولة، حتى يحصل عليها الجميع بسرعة.

We can install new technology such as more **powerful** pumps to remove the water. We can keep drains clear and in good condition so water can move away quickly. When it rains a lot in a short time, there is a **risk** of flooding. If we are prepared for this, we can minimize the dangerous effects of flooding.

يمكننا تركيب تكنولوجيا جديدة مثل مضخات أكثر قوة لإزالة المياه. يمكننا الحفاظ على المصارف نظيفة وفي حالة جيدة حتى يمكن أن تصرف المياه بسرعة. عندما تمطر كثيرًا في وقت قصير، فهناك خطر حدوث فيضانات. إذا كنا مستعدين لذلك، يمكننا تقليل الآثار الخطيرة للفيضانات.



ACTIVITY

1 Look and complete.



w_rn



met_orol_gist



r_in



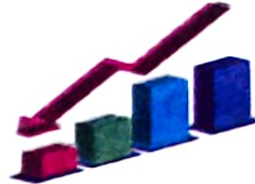
pro_ect



c_ll_pse



in_tall



m_nimi_e



w_sha_ay

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

u_r
n_i



n_l_t_i
l_a_s



c_l_a_o
s_e_p_l



n_a
r_w



p_c_t_r
t_e_o



w_h_s_a
w_a_y_a



3 Choose the correct word(s).

① (Archaeologists - Meteorologists - Psychologists) are people who study the weather.

② We can (minimize - collapse - ruin) the effects of flooding if we are prepared.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (6)

- ③ Flood water can (wash away - warn - install) cars, roads and bridges.
- ④ We need to (predict - install - ruin) a pump to remove the water.
- ⑤ We can (ruin - protect - collapse) our streets with barriers.
- ⑥ Flood water can (ruin - install - protect) homes and shops.
- ⑦ Buildings can (collapse - wash away - minimize) when there are dangerous floods.
- ⑧ Meteorologists can (protect - warn - ruin) people about bad weather.
- ⑨ Meteorologists can (predict - minimize - ruin) floods.
- ⑩ (Dams - Canals - Barriers) can protect buildings.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ① Meteorologists are people | a) stops water in a river. |
| ② ruin | b) to keep something safe |
| ③ protect | c) who study the weather. |
| ④ A dam | d) to damage or destroy something |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

5 Fill in the spaces with:

protect - minimize - barrier - ruin

- ① Flood water can homes.
- ② To is to make something smaller or less.
- ③ To is to keep something safe.
- ④ A stops water in the street and protects buildings.

Lesson
(5)

LIFE SKILLS AND VALUES

 Listen, point and say.



rescue

ينقذ



emergency responder

مسعف الطوارئ



rainfall

هطول الأمطار



brave

شجاع



calm

هادئ



generous

كريم



scared

خائف



polite

مehذب



lazy

كسول



cooperative

متعاون



funny

مضحك

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Definitions

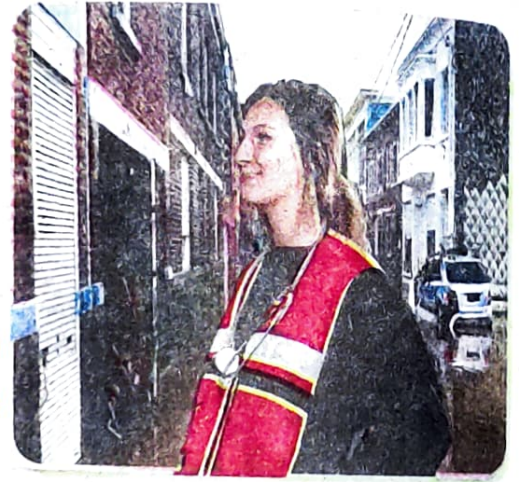
volunteer	: to help other people without getting paid	ينطوع
scary	: frightening	مخيف
rescue	: to take someone out of a dangerous place	ينقذ
heavy rainfall	: a lot of rainfall	هطول غزير للأمطار
emergency responder	: help his community when there is an emergency	مسعف الطوارئ

Look and read.

Lara is an **emergency responder**.

When there is a flood, she is one of the first people to **rescue** the other **citizens** from the flood water.

لارا مسعفة الطوارئ. عندما يكون هناك فيضان. فهي من أوائل الأشخاص الذين ينقذون المواطنين الآخرين من مياه الفيضان.



Can you describe what an emergency responder is?

هل يمكنك وصف ما هو مسعف الطوارئ؟

Yes, of course. I **volunteer** to help my community when there is an emergency. We aren't the police, or firefighters, but we are trained to help them do their jobs. We can get to a place quickly, do first aid, and rescue people from floods.

نعم بالطبع. أنا أتطوع لمساعدة مجتمعي عندما تكون هناك حالة طوارئ. نحن لسنا من رجال الشرطة أو رجال الإطفاء. لكننا مدربون على مساعدتهم في أداء وظائفهم. يمكننا الوصول إلى المكان بسرعة وتقديم الإسعافات الأولية وإنقاذ الناس من الفيضانات.





Do you **enjoy** being an **emergency** responder?
هل تستمتعين بكونك مسعفة طوارئ؟

Yes, I do. I like helping people and we do lots of different things.

نعم. أنا أحب مساعدة الناس ونقوم بالعديد من الأشياء المختلفة.



Is it a **scary** thing to do?

هل هو عمل مخيف؟

Well, sometimes it is, but then I think that other people will be **scared** as well, so I **focus** on how I can help them.

حسنًا، في بعض الأحيان يكون الأمر كذلك، ولكن عندئذ أعتقد أن الآخرين سيكونون خائفين أيضًا، لذلك أركز على كيف يمكنني مساعدتهم.



What do you do when there is a flood?

ماذا تفعلون عندما يكون هناك فيضان؟

We know it might be **dangerous** when there is very heavy rainfall. So, my **team** are **ready** to help people quickly. Our job is to help people who are sick or injured.

نحن نعلم أنه قد يكون خطيرًا جدًا عندما تهطل الأمطار بغزارة. لذلك فريقنا مستعد لمساعدة الناس بسرعة. وظيفتنا هي مساعدة المرضى أو المصابين.



How do you **travel** around the city?

كيف تنتقلون حول المدينة؟

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

Al-Baheer - Connect D

We have small boats, so we can go to different houses and help people who are **stuck** in their homes.

لدينا قوارب صغيرة، لذا يمكننا الذهاب إلى منازل مختلفة ومساعدة الأشخاص العالقين في منازلهم.



Are people **pleased** to see you?

هل الناس سعداء برؤيتك؟

Yes, they are! That's one of the things I love about **volunteering** - you can make people very happy!

نعم! وهذا أحد الأشياء التي أحبها في التطوع - يمكنك أن تجعل الناس سعداء جدًا!



Thank you, Lara.

شكراً لك، يا لارا.

Adjectives

Positive Good



- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| • caring | responsible |
| • polite | cooperative |
| • funny | calm |
| • generous | brave |
| • wise | sociable |

Negative Bad



- | | |
|---------|-----------------|
| • bossy | cowardly (جبان) |
| • lazy | mean |
| • moody | selfish |

Definitions

bossy	: likes telling people what to do	متسلط
selfish	: thinks about himself	أناني
mean	: not like to share things	بخيل
generous	: likes helping others and giving people presents	كريم
calm	: not worried or excited about things	هادئ
cooperative	: works very well in a team	متعاون
polite	: speaks nicely to everyone and behaves well	مؤدب
caring	: looks after other people	مُهتم بالآخرين
responsible	: thinks about saving others	مسؤول
moody	: We don't know if he is going to be happy, sad or angry.	متقلب المزاج
funny	: tells a lot of jokes and make people laugh	مضحك
wise	: sensible and always do the right thing	حكيم
brave	: not scared in dangerous situations	شجاع
sociable	: likes communicating with people	اجتماعي

Help your child identify these definitions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه التعريفات.

Unit (6)

Look and read.



Sara tells a lot of jokes and makes people laugh, but she also likes telling people what to do! She sometimes tells her friend's secrets to other people.

سارة تروي الكثير من النكات وتجعل الناس يضحكون، لكنها تحب أيضًا إخبار الناس بما يجب عليهم فعله! أحيانًا تقول أسرار صديقتها لأشخاص آخرين.

She is **funny** and **bossy**. هي مرحة ومتسلطة.

Fares often thinks about saving others. He likes sharing things. He's a very good communicator.

غالبًا ما يفكر فارس في إنقاذ الآخرين. يحب مشاركة الأشياء. إنه متواصل جيد للغاية.



He's **brave** and **sociable**. هو شجاع واجتماعي.



Nesma doesn't worry or get excited about things. She likes helping other people and she is a good friend. She likes giving people presents.

نسمة لا تقلق ولا تتحمس للأشياء. تحب مساعدة الآخرين وهي صديقة جيدة. تحب إعطاء الناس الهدايا.

She's **calm** and **generous**. هي هادئة وكريمة.

Wael works very well in a team. He speaks nicely to everyone and behaves well. He works very hard.

وائل يعمل بشكل جيد جدًا في فريق. يتحدث بلطف مع الجميع ويتصرف بشكل جيد. إنه يعمل بجد.



He's **polite** and **cooperative**. هو مهذب ومتعاون.



Adam is sensible and can look after other people. He is kind and he isn't scared in dangerous situations.

آدم عاقل ويمكنه الاعتناء بالآخرين. هو لطيف ولا يخاف في المواقف الخطيرة.

He's **responsible** and **caring**. هو شخص مسئول ومهتم بالآخرين.

Look and complete.



f _ nn _



br _ _ e



sc _ _ ed



la _ _



g _ ner _ us



c _ lm



p _ l _ te



ca _ ng

Choose the correct word(s).

To (collapse - rescue - play) is to take someone out of a dangerous place.

Fares thinks about himself. He is (brave - selfish - mean).

She likes giving people presents. She is (mean - generous - selfish).

(Cowardly - Bossy - Caring) means to look after other people.

Daddy isn't scared of anything! He's (moody - brave - bossy).

Hany is (wise - polite - moody). You don't know if he is going to be happy, sad or angry.

Omar is (wise - moody - bossy). He is clever and knows a lot of things.

Fatima is always (bossy - moody - calm). She never gets excited or worried.

Maryam always says "thank you"! She's very (moody - polite - bossy).

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 A volunteer helps other people | a He is caring. |
| 2 Tom thinks about himself. | b people what to do. |
| 3 He looks after other people. | c without getting paid. |
| 4 A bossy person likes telling | d He is selfish. |

4 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 can - rescue - Lara - from - people - floods - .

.....

2 like - helping - I - people - other - .

.....

5 Read the passage, then answer the questions.

I am an emergency responder. I volunteer when there is an emergency. We are trained to help firefighters and the police. We can do first aid and help rescue people from floods. Sometimes it is scary, but I like helping people. When there was a flood in Cairo, we had to help people who were sick or injured. We used small boats to travel around the city. We helped rescue people who were stuck in their homes. People were very pleased to see us!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 We are trained to help (teachers - firefighters - farmers).
- 2 People were very (wise - bossy - pleased) to see us.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 When does an emergency responder volunteer?
-
- 4 What did they use to travel around the city?
-

6 Fill in the spaces with:

volunteer - rescue - mean - bossy

- 1 A person likes telling people what to do.
- 2 To is to take someone out of a dangerous place.
- 3 Sara is She doesn't like sharing things.
- 4 To is to help others without getting paid.

7 Complete the following dialogue with:

rescue - is - emergency - scary

- Ali : What do you want to be?
- Omar : I want to be an (1) responder.
- Ali : Why?
- Omar : To help and (2) people.
- Ali : Is it a (3) thing to do?
- Omar : Well, sometimes it (4)

8 Copy the following sentence.

I'm not scared of anything! I'm brave.

Listen and repeat.



Phonics

-OUS
/əs/



nervous
عصبي / متوتر



enormous
ضخم / هائل



famous
مشهور



dangerous
خطير



generous
كريم

Look and read.

The famous statue is enormous!

التمثال المشهور ضخم!



I'm nervous. Is it dangerous?

أنا متوتر. هل هو خطير؟



Don't be nervous. It isn't dangerous.

But it is enormous!

لا تكن متوتراً. إنه ليس خطيراً. لكنه ضخم!



Our teacher isn't famous, but she's kind and generous.

معلمتنا ليست مشهورة، ولكنها عطوفة وكريمة!

1 Look and complete.



danger _____ gener _____ nerv _____ enorm _____ f _ mo _ s

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

gnar
eu d so



eren
s g u o



uore
n v s



3 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 The famous statue is (small - little - enormous). It's very big.
- 2 I'm (dangerous - nervous - generous). I'm not pleased.
- 3 The lion is (dangerous - generous - famous).
- 4 All people know him. He is (generous - famous - enormous).

4 Unscramble the following words to make correct sentences.

1 is - The - enormous - statue - .

2 teacher - My - kind - generous - is - and - .

3 woman - is - This - nervous - very - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

Unit (6)

5 Look and write a sentence under each picture.

1



lion - dangerous

2



tree - enormous

6 Fill in the spaces with:

dangerous - enormous - generous

1 My teacher is very

2 The lion is very

3 The famous statue is

7 Copy the following sentences.

Don't be nervous.

My teacher is generous.

Lesson
(7)

Reading Life skills

Listen, point and say.



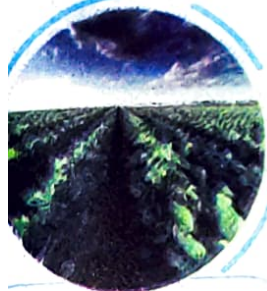
soil
تربة



water
يسقى / يروى



irrigation
الرى



crop
محصول



Farming
الزراعة



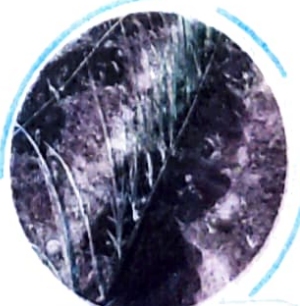
well
بئر



flood
الغمر بالماء



drip
تقطر / تنقيط



holes
ثقوب



spray
الرش

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Unit (6)

Look, listen and read.

Farming in dry areas

الزراعة في المناطق الجافة

We all know that plants need sunlight, food, and water. So how do people grow food in the desert, when there isn't enough water?

نعلم جميعاً أن النباتات تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس والغذاء والماء. إذن كيف يزرع الناس الطعام في الصحراء، عندما لا توجد مياه كافية؟

1) Old and new irrigation الري قديماً وحديثاً

Farmers in dry countries need to water their crops. There isn't enough rainfall to give the crops all the water they need so they use irrigation. This means bringing water in through pipes, from wells, canals, or other sources of water. Farmers also use pumps to move water from rivers or wells to the fields.



يحتاج المزارعون في البلدان الجافة إلى ري محاصيلهم. ليس هناك ما يكفي من الأمطار لإعطاء المحاصيل كل المياه التي تحتاجها لذلك يستخدمون الري. وهذا يعني جلب المياه عبر الأنابيب أو الآبار أو القنوات أو مصادر المياه الأخرى. يستخدم المزارعون أيضاً المضخات لنقل المياه من الأنهار أو الآبار إلى الحقول.

Ancient Egyptians used irrigation in the past, and people still need it today. Irrigation systems have changed over time and now they can carry more water. The problem with modern irrigation is that it can take too much water out of rivers, lakes, and springs.

استخدم المصريون القدماء الري في الماضي، وما زال الناس بحاجة إليه اليوم. لقد تغيرت أنظمة الري بمرور الوقت وأصبح بإمكانها الآن حمل المزيد من المياه. تكمن مشكلة الري الحديث في أنه يمكن أن يأخذ الكثير من المياه من الأنهار والبحيرات والينابيع.

2 Drip, flood and spray التنقيط والغمر والرش

There are different ways to irrigate a field.

Flood irrigation covers a whole field in water.

Or there are systems that spray water across a field. Both these types can waste water. The



best way is drip irrigation. This is where water drips onto the plants through holes in the pipes. The water only goes onto the plant, where it is needed, not into the ground. And water isn't lost to evaporation.

هناك طرق مختلفة لري الحقل. الري بالغمر يغطي الحقل بالكامل بالماء. أو هناك أنظمة لرش الماء عبر الحقل. كلا النوعين يمكن أن يهدر الماء. أفضل طريقة هي الري بالتنقيط. هذا هو المكان الذي تقطر فيه المياه على النباتات من خلال الثقوب في الأنابيب. الماء يذهب فقط إلى النبات حيث يحتاج وليس في الأرض. ولا يتم خسارة الماء بسبب عملية التبخير.

3 Hydroponic farming الزراعة المائية

A new way of farming in dry countries is hydroponic farming. This is a modern technology that is useful in dry countries.

It uses only water, not soil, to grow plants.



The special water contains the minerals that the plant needs. This system uses a lot less water than traditional farming. Farmers can start a hydroponic farm anywhere - it doesn't have to be on land that is good for traditional farming. Is this what all farms will look like in the future?

الزراعة المائية هي طريقة جديدة للزراعة في البلدان الجافة. هي تقنية حديثة ومفيدة في البلدان الجافة. إنها تستخدم الماء فقط وليس التربة لزراعة النباتات. تحتوي المياه الخاصة على المعادن التي يحتاجها النبات. يستخدم هذا النظام كمية أقل من المياه مقارنة بالزراعة التقليدية. يمكن للمزارعين بدأ الزراعة المائية في أي مكان - ليس من الضروري أن تكون على أرض جيدة للزراعة التقليدية. هل هذا ما ستبدو عليه جميع المزارع في المستقبل؟



Activities

1 Look and complete.



sp__y



d__p



fl__d



c__p

2 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 Plants need (moonlight - sunlight - night), food and water.
- 2 Hydroponic farming use only (air - water - land), not soil to grow plants.
- 3 Hydroponic farming uses (more - less - a lot) water than traditional farming.
- 4 Farmers use (bikes - pumps - animals) to move water to their fields.
- 5 You don't need good land to start a (hydroponic - drip - spray) farming.
- 6 There are (vitamins - minerals - materials) in the water that the plants need.

3 Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 There isn't enough | a need to use irrigation. |
| 2 Plants need | b rainfall to water the crops. |
| 3 Farmers in dry countries | c sunlight and water. |
| 1- () | 2- () |
| | 3- () |

4 Read the passage, then answer the questions.

Farmers in dry countries need to water their crops. There isn't enough rainfall to give the crops all the water they need so they use irrigation. This means bringing water in through pipes, from wells, canals, or other sources of water. Farmers also use pumps to move water from rivers or wells to the fields.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Farmers bring water in through (lines - pipes - trucks) from wells or canals.
- 2 (Modern - Old - Good) irrigation can take too much water.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What can farmers use to move water out of rivers or wells?
- 4 What do farmers in dry countries need?

5 Read and complete.

problem - irrigation - systems

Ancient Egyptians used irrigation in the past, and people still need it today. Irrigation (1) have changed over time and now they can carry more water. The

(2) with modern (3) is that it can take too much water out of rivers, lakes, and springs.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (8)

Skills - Reading CLIL: Science

Water engineering

الهندسة المائية



waterwheel
ساقية



turbine
محرك / التوربين



High Dam
السد العالي



aqueduct
قناة مائية



desalination
تحلية المياه المالحة



shadoof
شادوف



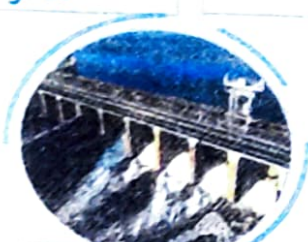
lake
بحيرة



oasis
واحة



machine
آلة



hydroelectric
الطاقة الكهرومائية



ox / oxen
ثور / ثيران

Definitions

desalination	: taking salt out of sea water	تحلية المياه
aqueduct	: It carries water long distances.	قناة مائية
turbine	: a wheel that uses running water to create energy	توربين
dam	: a barrier created to stop the flow of water in a river	سد
waterwheel	: It turns around like a wheel.	ساقية
shadoof	: It is used with a bucket that goes into a well and brings up water.	شادوف

Look and read.

Water Engineering

هندسة المياه

In the past في الماضي

Waterwheels used the energy of running water to move machines. The wheel is in a river, and the water makes it go round. The oldest picture of a waterwheel is from Egypt over 2,500 years ago!



People have used waterwheels to help with irrigation and drinking water for a long time. They are very important today, too. Fayoum has more than 200 waterwheels.

تستخدم السواقي طاقة المياه الجارية لتحريك الآلات. تكون الساقية في النهر ويجعلها الماء تدور. أقدم صورة لساقية مياه من مصر منذ أكثر من ٢٥٠٠ عام! يستخدم الناس السواقي للمساعدة في الري وشرب المياه لفترة طويلة. إنها مهمة جدًا اليوم أيضًا. يوجد في الفيوم أكثر من ٢٠٠ ساقية.

People built aqueducts in the past to move water from wells or rivers into cities. The aqueduct of Cairo took water from the Nile the Citadel of Cairo. The water ran from a well into a canal on top of a wall.



Later, people built a tall tower with a well inside it. Water could move up inside the tower with six waterwheels. They used oxen to make the wheels go round. When water got to the top of the tower, it could go down the aqueduct to the citadel because of gravity. People built aqueducts in ancient Greece and ancient Rome as well. They could move water from high up in the mountains to cities where people needed it.

بنى الناس القنوات المائية في الماضي لنقل المياه من الآبار أو الأنهار إلى المدن. كانت قناة القاهرة المائية تأخذ المياه من النيل إلى القلعة بالقاهرة. كانت المياه تتدفق من بئر إلى قناة على سور. في وقت لاحق، بنى الناس بئرًا طويلًا بداخله بئر. كانت المياه تتحرك داخل البرج بستة سواقي. استخدموا الثيران لجعل العجلات تدور. عندما يصل الماء إلى قمة البرج، كان ينزل من القناة إلى القلعة بسبب الجاذبية. بنى الناس قنوات مائية في اليونان القديمة وروما القديمة أيضًا. استطاعوا نقل المياه من أعالي الجبال إلى المدن حيث يحتاج الناس إليها.

Today.... اليوم



The High Dam is famous because it is one of the largest dams in the world. When the Nile flooded in the past, too much water went onto the land. Now, the dam can control the water and stop flooding.

يشتهر السد العالي بكونه من أكبر السدود في العالم. عندما كان فيض النيل في الماضي، كانت المياه تغمر الأرض. الآن، يمكن للسد التحكم في المياه ووقف الفيضانات.

The dam stops the water in the River Nile and makes Lake Nasser. This helps to provide Egypt with enough water. The moving water turns a turbine to make hydroelectric power, so the dam gives us electricity, too. A turbine turns round, just like a wheel does. When people built the dam, they had to move the ancient monuments at Abu Simbel to higher ground!

يوقف السد المياه في نهر النيل ويكوّن بحيرة ناصر. هذا يساعد على تزويد مصر بما يكفي من المياه. يدير الماء المتحرك التوربينات لتوليد الطاقة الكهربائية. وبالتالي يمدنا السد بالكهرباء أيضًا. يدور التوربين تمامًا كما تدور العجلة. عندما بنى الناس السد، كان عليهم نقل الآثار القديمة في أبو سمبل إلى أرض أكثر ارتفاعًا!

Desalination means taking the salt out of sea water to get fresh water. It is useful in countries which don't have a lot of water. It can be expensive and use a lot of energy, but engineers are developing new technologies that use less energy and cost less money. In the future, people will get more fresh water from desalination.



تحلية المياه تعني إخراج الملح من مياه البحر للحصول على المياه العذبة. إنه مفيد في البلدان التي ليس لديها الكثير من المياه. قد تكون باهظة الثمن وتستهلك قدرًا كبيرًا من الطاقة. لكن المهندسين يطورون تقنيات جديدة تستخدم طاقة أقل وتكلفة أقل. في المستقبل، سيحصل الناس على المزيد من المياه العذبة من تحلية المياه.

 Look and read.


Name: A shadoof
 New or old: old
 Where is it used? At an oasis in the desert
 How does it work? A bucket goes into a well and brings water

A shadoof

A shadoof is a tool used for irrigation. It's old. Farmers use it at an oasis in the desert to bring water from a well. A bucket goes into a well and brings up water.



Activities

1 Choose the correct word(s).

- ① (Cars - Sea wheels - Waterwheels) used the energy of running water to move machines.
- ② People have used (waterwheels - cars - turbines) to help with irrigation.
- ③ People built (dams - waterwheels - aqueducts) in the past to move water from wells or rivers into cities.
- ④ People used (turbines - cars - oxen) to make the wheels go round.
- ⑤ The High Dam is (dangerous - famous - generous) because it is the largest dam in the world.
- ⑥ (Irrigation - Desalination - Deforestation) means taking the salt out of sea water to get fresh water.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (6)

2 Read and match.

1 desalination

2 aqueduct

3 waterwheel

4 dam

5 turbine

a a barrier created to stop water in river.

b It turns around like a wheel.

c taking salt out of sea water.

d a wheel that uses running water to create energy.

e It carries water long distances.

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

5-()

3 Read the passage, then answer the questions.

Desalination means taking the salt out of sea water to get fresh water. It is useful in countries like Egypt which doesn't have a lot of water. It can be expensive and use a lot of energy, but engineers are developing new technologies that use less energy and cost less money. In the future, people will get more fresh water from desalination.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 Engineers are developing new technologies that use (more - less - a lot of) energy.

2 People will get more fresh water from (pollution - desalination - station).

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What does "Desalination" mean?

4 Does desalination use a lot of energy or little energy?

4 Fill in the spaces with:

shadoof - Desalination - Waterwheels - aqueduct

- 1 can help with irrigation.
- 2 costs more money.
- 3 A is used to get water from a well.
- 4 An moves water from wells or rivers into cities.

5 Read and complete.

canal - citadel - tower

This is the Cairo Citadel Aqueduct. Water ran from a well into a (1) on top of a wall. There was a well and six waterwheels inside a tall (2) Oxen made the wheels go around. Then water could move up inside the tower. When water got to the top of the tower, it went down the aqueduct to the (3)

electricity - Turbines

The High Dam is the biggest dam in the world.

- (1) in the dam create hydroelectric power. This power creates (2)

6 Copy the following sentence.

The High Dam is one of the largest dams in the world.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

1 | Look and complete.



p _ _ p



s _ nd _ ags



ra _ nf _ ll



d _ nger _ us

2 | Complete the following dialogue with:

flood - emergency - injured - job

Mariam : What is your father's (1) ..?

Mona : He's an (2) responder.

Mariam : What does he do when there is a (3) ..?

Mona : He helps people who are sick or (4) ..

3 | Choose the correct word(s).

1 In a flood, people can put up a (pipe - barrier - drain) to stop water in the street.

2 To (collapse - predict - protect) is to fall down.

3 To (warn - install - minimize) is to put something in.

4 There aren't (too much - much - enough) apples in the box.

5 There are too (much - many - enough) rulers.

4 | Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 A dam stops | a to carry away something with water. |
| 2 Sandbags are used | b water in a river. |
| 3 Meteorologists | c to keep water out of buildings. |
| 4 Wash away is | d study the weather. |

1-() •

2-()

3-() •

4-()

5 | Read the passage, then answer the questions.

Waterwheels used the energy of running water to move machines. The wheel is in a river, and the water makes it go round. The oldest picture of a waterwheel is from Egypt over 2,500 years ago! People have used waterwheels to help with irrigation and drinking water for a long time. They are very important today, too. Fayoum has more than 200 waterwheels.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Fayoum has more than (2,500 - 20 - 200) waterwheels.
- 2 People have used waterwheels to help with irrigation and drinking (milk - water - coffee).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where is the oldest picture of waterwheel from?
- 4 Why did waterwheels use the energy of running water?

6 | Look and write a sentence under each picture.

1



lion - dangerous

2



volunteers - help

7 | Copy the following sentence.

The High Dam is famous.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS

Final Revision



Fares and the Fish

فارس والسمكة



The Story

Fares and the Fish

The Characters



Fares



Mom



Dad



Dalia



Wael



Adam



Help your child identify the characters.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الشخصيات.



Vocabulary



cycle

يركب دراجة



swimming

السباحة



pool

حمام سباحة



bike

دراجة



garage

الجراج / ورشة



helmet

خوذة



athlete

لاعب رياضي



knee pads

واقى ركبة



Picture Dictionary



ambulance

سيارة إسعاف



fish tank

حوض سمك



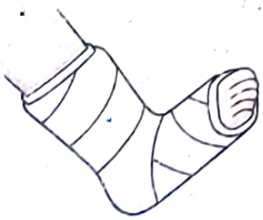
snorkel

التيوب للتنفس تحت الماء



ramp

منحدر



cast

جبيرة / جبس



mask

قناع



skateboard

لوح التزلج

Setting

المكان



the pool

حمام السباحة



the park

الحديقة



the hospital

المستشفى



home

المنزل

The plot

حبكة القصة



The Beginning

المقدمة

Fares loved swimming and he went swimming every day.

أحب فارس السباحة وكان يذهب للسباحة كل يوم.

He wanted to be an athlete.

أراد أن يكون لاعب رياضي.



The Middle

وسط

Fares saw his friends in the park and they were on their skateboards.

رأى فارس أصدقاءه في الحديقة وكانوا على ألواح التزلج الخاصة بهم.

Fares stood and went very fast. He slipped and fell.

وقف فارس وذهب بسرعة كبيرة. انزلق وسقط.

His leg was broken. He became angry and sad.

كسرت راقه فأصبح غاضبًا وحزينًا.



The End

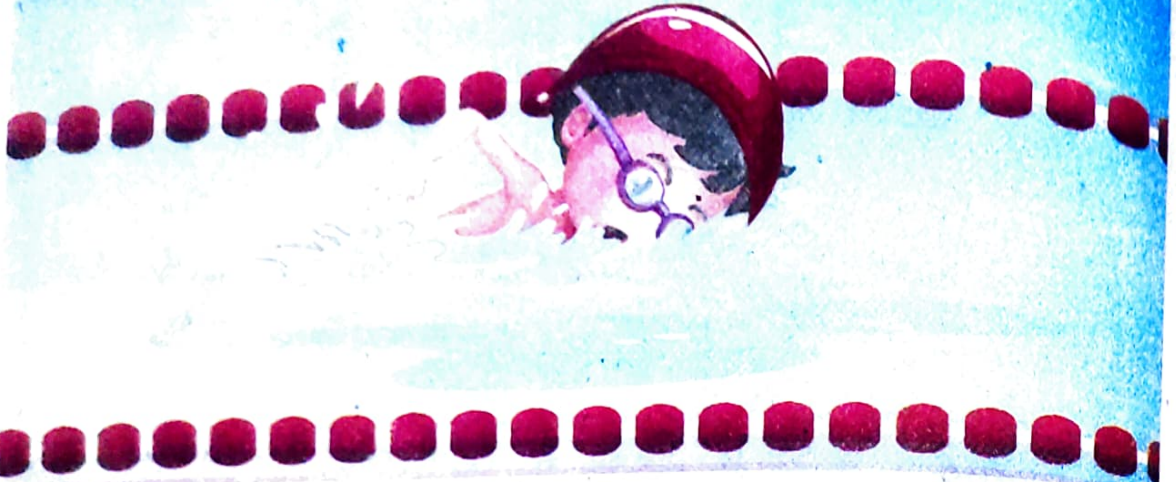
النهاية

At the end, his leg got better.

في النهاية، تحسنت راقه.

He went to the sea, snorkelled and swam again.

ذهب إلى البحر، غطس وسبح مرة أخرى.



Fares **lived** in Hurghada with his family. He loved swimming. He went **swimming** every day and **trained** in the **pool** for an hour. He wanted to be an athlete and to win lots of competitions.

كان فارس يعيش في الغردقة مع أسرته. وكان يحب السباحة ويمارس السباحة كل يوم. وكان يريد أن يكون لاعباً رياضياً وأن يفوز بمسابقات كثيرة.



Fares and his family lived **close to** the sports center. Sometimes he **walked to** the pool with his **mom** or **dad**.

كان فارس وأسرته يسكنون بالقرب من المركز الرياضي، وكان يمشي أحياناً إلى حمام السباحة مع أمه أو أباه.



Sometimes he **cycled** to the **pool**.

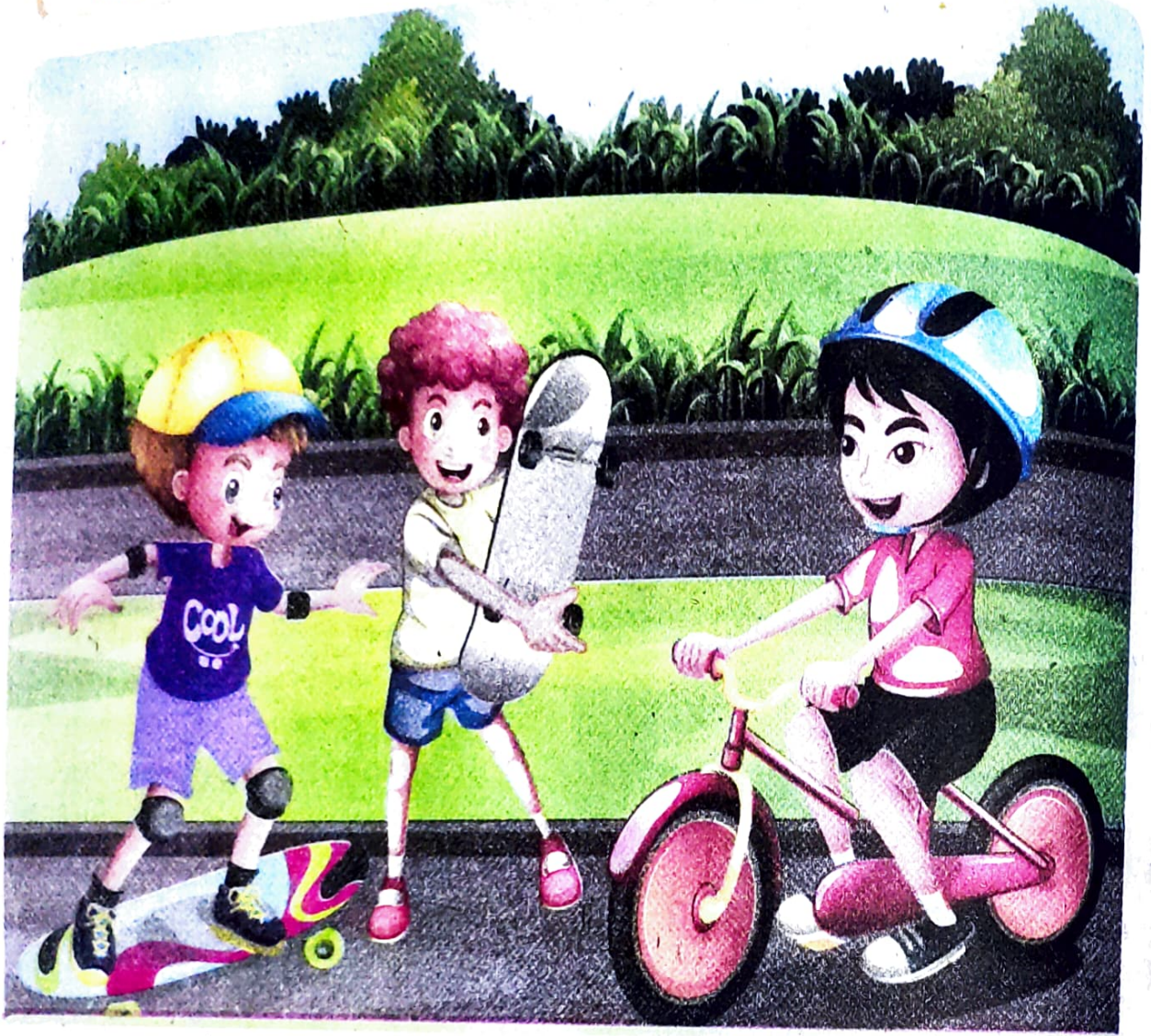
وكان أحياناً يركب دراجته إلى حمام السباحة.



One day, Fares got his bike out of the garage so he could cycle to the sports center. "Have you got your cycle **helmet**, Fares?" asked his mom. "Yes Mom, of course," said Fares, putting on his helmet. "See you soon!" Fares cycled through the park. It was a sunny morning and he felt happy.

يوماً واحداً، أخرج فارس دراجته من الجراج (المرائب) ليركبها إلى المركز الرياضي. وسألته أمه "هل أخذت خوذة ركوب

الدراجة يا فارس؟" قال فارس، بالطبع، نعم، نعم يا أمي، أراك قريباً! ثم ركب فارس دراجته عبر الحديقة. كان صباحاً مشمساً وكان



In the park, Fares saw his friends. They were on their skateboards. "Be careful, Adam," said Fares. "Why aren't you wearing a helmet or knee pads?" "I don't need to," said Adam. "I'm really good at skateboarding". "I haven't tried skateboarding before," said Fares. "It looks fun!" "Do you want to try?" asked Adam. "Yes, please!" said Fares.

رأى فارس أصدقاءه في الحديقة وكانوا يركبون ألواح التزلج الخاصة بهم، قال فارس: "كن حريصاً يا آدم، لماذا لا ترتدي خوذة أو واقي الركبتين؟" قال آدم "لست بحاجة لذلك، فأنا جيد في التزلج." قال فارس "أنا لم أجرب التزلج من قبل، ويبدو أنه ممتعاً!" فسأله آدم "هل تريد أن تجرب؟" فقال فارس "نعم، من فضلك!"



Activities

1 Read and answer the following questions.

- ① Where did Fares live?
- ② How did Fares go to the pool?
- ③ Why did Fares get his bike out of the garage?
- ④ What were his friends doing in the park?

2 Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- ① Fares trained in the pool for an hour.
- ② Fares went to the pool with his friends.
- ③ Fares walked through the park.
- ④ Adam was wearing a helmet and a knee pad.

3 Read and complete the sentences.

- ① Fares wanted to be an
- ② Fares and his family lived close to the
- ③ Fares wanted to win a lot of
- ④ Sometimes Fares to the pool.
- ⑤ It was a morning.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

Vocabulary



top
قمة



ramp
منحدر



push
يدفع



slip
يزلق



hurt
يؤلم



move
يتحرك



fall
يقع



ambulance
سيارة إسعاف



broken
مكسور



x-ray
أشعة إكس



cast
جبيرة



hospital
مستشفى



Fares stood at the **top** of the **ramp**. "How high is it?" he asked Adam. "I don't know," said Adam. "It isn't very high. It's **easy**!"

وقف فارس على قمة المنحدر وسأل آدم "كم ارتفاع هذا المنحدر؟" فقال آدم "لا أعرف، إنه ليس مرتفعاً جداً. إنه سهل!"



Fares stood on the skateboard and pushed with his feet. He went quickly down the ramp - but he was too fast! Fares slipped and fell.

وقف فارس على لوح التزلج ودفع بقدميه، فزل بسرعة على المنحدر ولكنه كان مسرعاً جداً! فانزلق فارس وسقط.



"Are you OK?" asked Adam. He was worried. "No," said Fares. "My leg hurts." "Can you move it?" asked Adam. "No, I can't," said Fares.

سأله آدم: "هل أنت بخير؟" وكان آدم قلقاً. قال فارس: "لا، إن ساقِي تؤلمني." "هل تستطيع أن تحركها؟" قال فارس "لا أستطيع."



"It might be **broken**," said Adam. "I'm going to call your mom, and then I'm going to call an **ambulance**." "Oh no," said Fares. "I won't be able to swim!"

قال آدم "ربما تكون مكسورة، سأ اتصل بأمك ثم سأ اتصل بسيارة الإسعاف." فقال فارس "أوه، لا. لن أكون قادرًا على السباحة!"



At the **hospital**, Fares had an **x-ray**. "I'm sorry," said the doctor. "Your leg is broken. Look at this." Fares saw his **bone** on the **photo**. "You will have to wear a **cast** for about six weeks," said the doctor. Fares was very sad.

وفي المستشفى أجرى فارس أشعة. قال الطبيب "آسف، إن ساقك مكسورة. انظر إلى هذا." رأى فارس عظمته في صورة الأشعة. قال الطبيب "يجب أن تضع جبيرة لمدة ستة أسابيع." كان فارس حزينًا جدًا.



Activities

1 Read and answer the following questions.

- 1 Where did Fares stand?
.....
- 2 What happened when Fares went quickly down the ramp?
.....
- 3 What did Adam call?
.....
- 4 What will Fares have to wear?
.....

2 Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1 Fares stood at the top of the ramp.
- 2 Fares's hand hurts.
- 3 Fares could move.
- 4 Fares's leg was broken.

3 Read and complete the sentences.

- 1 Fares stood at the top of the
- 2 Fares went down the ramp.
- 3 Fares slipped and
- 4 Fares couldn't
- 5 Adam called an
- 6 At the hospital, Fares had an
- 7 Fares saw his on the photo.
- 8 Fares will have to wear a for about six weeks.

Vocabulary



lay down
رقد



borrow
يستعير



comic
مجلة مصورة



rude
وقح



carry
يحمل



accident
حادثة



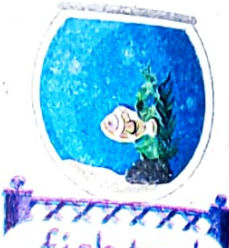
movie
فيلم



kind
عطوف



surprise
مفاجأة



fish tank
حوض سمك



At home, Fares lay down on his bed. He was angry and sad, and his leg hurt. "Do you want to come and watch TV, Fares?" asked his little brother Wael. "No," said Fares. "Do you want to borrow my comic, Fares?" asked his sister Dalia. "No," said Fares. "Go away."

وفي البيت رقد فارس في فراشه وكان غاضباً وحزيناً، وكانت ساقه تؤلمه، وسأله أخوه الصغير وائل "هل تريد أن تأتي وتشاهد التلفاز يا فارس؟" قال فارس "لا" سألته أخته داليا "هل تريد أن تستعير مجلتي المصورة يا فارس؟" قال فارس "لا، ابتعدا عني."



Later that evening, Fares apologized to his family. "I'm sorry I was rude," he said. "I know you are trying to help me. I'm angry and sad because I had a stupid accident, and now I can't swim." "Don't worry, Fares," said Mom. "We understand. Let's watch a movie together." "Thank you," said Fares.

وفي وقت لاحق في المساء، اعتذر فارس لأسرته قائلاً: "أنا آسف، لقد كنت وقحاً. أعرف أنكم تحاولون مساعدتي، ولكنني غاضب وحزين، فقد وقع لي حادث غبي والآن لا يمكنني السباحة." قالت أمه "لا تقلق يا فارس، فنحن نتفهم ذلك. هيا بنا نشاهد فيلماً معاً." قال فارس "أشكركم يا أمي."



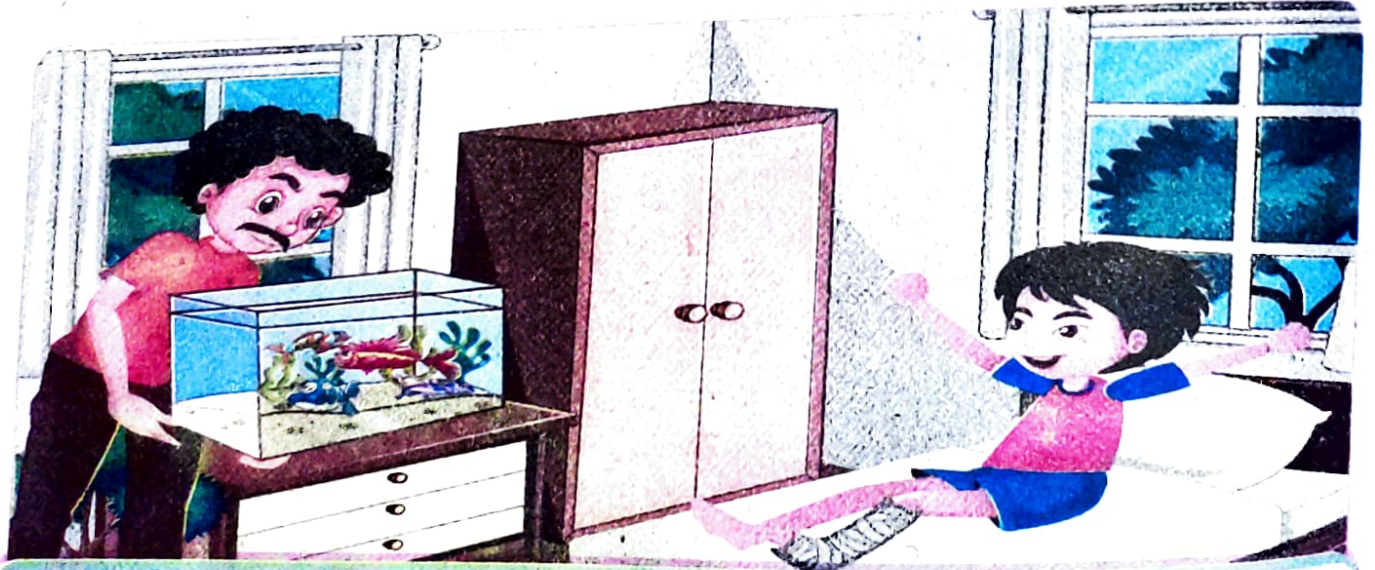
They watched a movie and then the children went to bed. But Fares' mom and dad were worried. Fares was usually happy and kind. "I don't like seeing Fares so sad," said Dad. "What can we do?" asked Mom. "He wants to swim, but he can't."

شاهدوا الفيلم، ثم ذهب الأطفال ليناموا، لكن أم فارس وأباه كانا قلقين، فقد كان فارس عادة سعيداً ولطيفاً. قال الأب "لا أحب أن أرى فارس حزيناً جداً!!" سألته الأم "ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل؟ إنه يريد أن يسبح ولكنه لا يستطيع."



The next day, Dad and Dalia went out early. When they came back, they had lots of boxes. They took the boxes into the kitchen. "What are you doing?" asked Mom. "It's a surprise," said Dalia.

وفي اليوم التالي خرج الأب وداليا في الصباح الباكر، وعندما عادا كان معهما الكثير من الصناديق. وأخذتا الصناديق إلى المطبخ. سألت الأم "ماذا تفعلان؟" قالت داليا "إنها مفاجأة."



Later, Dad went to see Fares. "Fares, look at this," he said. He carried a large fish tank into the room and put it on the table at the end of the bed. Fares looked. He could see lots of beautiful fish. "They're beautiful!" he said. "Thank you!"

وفي وقت لاحق ذهب الأب لرؤية فارس وقال له "يا فارس، انظر إلى هذا." كان الأب يحمل حوض سمك كبير ودخل به إلى الغرفة ووضعها على الطاولة التي عند طرف السرير. نظر فارس ورأى الكثير من الأسماك الجميلة. قال فارس "إنها جميلة! شكراً لك!"



Activities

1 Read and answer the following questions.

- 1 Where did Fares lie down?
- 2 Why was Fares angry?
- 3 What did they watch?
- 4 What did Fares' Dad bring for Fares?

2 Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1 Fares was angry and sad because his leg hurt.
- 2 Fares borrowed his sister's comic.
- 3 Fares can swim now.
- 4 There were beautiful fish in the fish tank.

3 Read and complete the sentences.

- 1 At home, Fares lay down on his
- 2 Fares apologized to his because he was rude.
- 3 Fares was angry because he had a stupid
- 4 Now Fares can't
- 5 Fares' Mom and Dad were about Fares.
- 6 Fares was usually and kind.
- 7 Dad carried a large into the room.
- 8 Fares could see lots of beautiful

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

The Story

Vocabulary



"How many fish can you see?" asked Wael. "I can see lots of fish! There are too many to count! I love them!" Fares was very happy.

سأله وائل "كم عدد الأسماك التي يمكن أن تراها؟" قال فارس "استطيع أن أرى أسماكًا كثيرة! يوجد الكثير ولا يمكنني عددهم! أنا أحبهم!" كان فارس سعيدًا جدًا.

Help your child to follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك على متابعة أحداث القصة.



Fares enjoyed watching the fish. He **learned** the names of the **different** types of fish. He fed them and kept their water **clean**. Fares was happy and he **rested**. Slowly, his leg got better. "Soon I'll be able to swim, like you," he said to his fish.

استمتع فارس بمشاهدة الأسماك، وتعلم أسماء الأنواع المختلفة منها. وكان يطعمها ويحافظ على نظافة مياهها. كان فارس سعيدًا واستراح. وبدأت ساقه تتحسن ببطء، قال فارس لأسماك "قريبًا سأكون قادرًا على السباحة مثلكم."



After two months, Fares was better. He didn't have to wear the cast, and he could walk and run. "Let's go to the **beach**!" said his mom. The family **packed** their things for a day at the beach. "I want to swim in the **sea**!" said Wael. "So do I!" said Fares.

وبعد شهرين تحسنت حالة فارس، ولم يعد بحاجة إلى وضع الجبيرة واستطاع أن يمشي ويجري. قالت أمه: "هيا نذهب إلى الشاطئ!" وحزمت الأسرة أمتعتها لقضاء يوم على الشاطئ. قال والد "أريد أن أسبح في البحر" فقال فارس "وأنا أيضًا!"



At the beach, Dad had another surprise. "Put on this mask and snorkel, Fares," he said. "You can swim and breathe underwater." Fares went into the sea, and he looked under the water. He could see lots of fish! "It's so beautiful. I want to swim like a fish!" he laughed.

وعلى الشاطئ كان لدى الأب مفاجأة أخرى. وقال "ارتد هذا القناع وأنبوب التنفس يا فارس، يمكنك أن تسبح وتتنفس تحت الماء." نزل فارس إلى البحر ونظر تحت الماء، واستطاع أن يرى الكثير من الأسماك! وضحك قائلاً "هذا جميل جدًا. أريد أن أسبح مثل السمكة!"



Activities

1 Read and answer the following questions.

- 1 What did Fares enjoy?
- 2 What did Fares learn?
- 3 What did Fares' father give him at the beach?
- 4 What could Fares see in the water?

2 Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1 There were a lot of fish in the tank.
- 2 Fares didn't enjoy watching the fish.
- 3 Fares learned the names of different types of fish.
- 4 Fares' leg didn't get better.
- 5 Fares could swim and breathe underwater with the mask and snorkel.

3 Read and complete the sentences.

- 1 Fares loved the
- 2 Fares learned the of the different types of fish.
- 3 Fares' got better.
- 4 Fares will be able to like a fish.
- 5 Fares' family packed their things for a day at the
- 6 Fares' dad gave him a and a snorkel.
- 7 Fares could and breathe underwater.
- 8 Fares wanted to swim like a

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



General Activities

1 Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1 Fares went swimming every day.
- 2 Fares always went to the sports center by car.
- 3 Fares wanted to try skateboarding.
- 4 Adam phoned an ambulance.
- 5 Fares was happy when he had to wear a cast.
- 6 Dalia and Wael were kind to Fares.
- 7 Dad and Dalia had a surprise for Fares.
- 8 Fares didn't like the fish.

2 Read and match.

- 1 Fares wanted to be
- 2 Fares always wore
- 3 Fares went down the ramp
- 4 Fares couldn't
- 5 The doctor showed Fares
- 6 Fares had to wear

- a too quickly.
- b a cast on his leg.
- c a cycle helmet when he rode his bike.
- d an x-ray.
- e move his leg.
- f an athlete.

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-() 5-() 6-()

3 Who says it?

- 1 "I'm really good at skateboarding."
- 2 "It isn't very high."
- 3 "I won't be able to swim!"

()
()
()

- 4 "Do you want to come and watch TV?" (.....)
- 5 "It's a surprise." (.....)
- 6 "How many fish can you see?" (.....)

4 Read and correct the bold words. Write the correct sentence.

- 1 Fares sometimes **ran** to the pool with his mom.
.....
- 2 Fares's mom and dad were **angry** because Fares was usually happy and kind.
.....
- 3 Dad bought Fares a fish tank because he couldn't **skateboard**.
.....
- 4 Fares thought the fish were **strange**.
.....
- 5 Fares enjoyed **drawing** the fish.
.....

5 Read and answer the following questions.

- 1 Why was Fares angry and sad?
.....
- 2 How did Dalia and Wael try to help Fares?
.....
- 3 Was Fares kind to them?
.....
- 4 What did Fares say to his family later that evening?
.....
- 5 Where did the family go when Fares was better?
.....
- 6 What did they want to do there?
.....
- 7 What did Fares's dad give him? Why?
.....
- 8 What did Fares see in the water?
.....
- 9 How do you think Fares felt?
.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (1)

At the track

Vocabulary

sports event
medal
race
runner
win
throw
centimeter
support
make fun of
snack
far
slow
high

حدث رياضي

ميدالية

سباق

عداء

يفوز

يرمي

سنتيمتر

يدعم / يساعد

يسخر من

وجبة خفيفة

بعيد

بطيء

عالي / مرتفع

athlete

team

track

fit

jump

measure

listen

have fun

tell secrets

tired

difficult

fast

spread rumors

لاعب رياضي

فريق

مضمار السباق

لائق بدنيا

يقفز

يقيس

يستمع

يمرح

يفشي الأسرار

متعب

صعب

سريع

ينشر شائعات



Phonics

Soft

"c"/s/



race

سباق



distance

مسافة



city

مدينة



citadel

قلعة



ice

ثلج



space

فضاء



mice

فئران



face
وجه



pencil
قلم رصاص



bicycle
دراجة



policeman
رجل شرطة



sports center
مركز رياضي

Hard
"c"/k/



cake
كعكة / تورتة



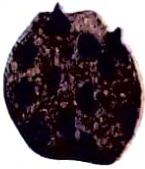
camel
جمل



coffee
قهوة



carrot
جزرة



cookie
كعكة محلاة



camera
كاميرا



plastic
بلاستيك



music
موسيقى



cold
بارد

Language

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative

صيغة المقارنة

adj. / adv. + er + than

e.g. Hana is faster than Sara. e.g. Hana runs faster than Sara.

Superlative

صيغة التفضيل

the + adj. / adv. + est

e.g. Ahmed is the fastest boy. e.g. Ahmed runs the fastest.

Help your child revise unit (1).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الأولى.

The Future with (will)

Form

Subject + will + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. He will win the race.

Keywords

tomorrow

غداً

next (Sunday)

(الأحد /) القادم

in the future

في المستقبل

I think

أعتقد

Negative

Subject + will not (won't) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. It won't be easy to win today.

(Yes / No) question

Will + subject + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. Will it be a good competition? - Yes, it will. - No, it won't.

Wh- question

Question word + will + subject + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. When will the event be?

- It will be tomorrow.



Activities on unit (1)

1 Look and complete.



a _ lete



ra _ e



_ ity



pen _ l



i _ e



sn _ ck



_ amel



m _ d _ l



r _ nn _ r



_ amera



dis _ an _ e



pl _ st _ c

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

r i d



t e

e t



m a

h h



i g

c k



e a

i c



t y

l s



o w

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (1)

s f

a t



i f

t



a f

r



3 Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

- 1 The race is a (measuring - map - distance) of 600 kilometers.
- 2 There's a big sports (event - distance - map).
- 3 Ali can (jump - win - throw) the ball far away.
- 4 Four athletes will (compete - write - read) in the 600 meter race.
- 5 They (go - do - make) a lot of exercise.
- 6 "Difficult" is the opposite of (long - tall - easy).
- 7 Never (make - do - go) fun of your friends.
- 8 If you make your friend sad, it's good to (pressure - spread - apologize).
- 9 Never (spread - spend - speak) rumors about your friends.
- 10 A famous footballer (spread - played - scored) 32 goals.
- 11 There are 60 seconds in a (minute - week - day).
- 12 How (tall - fast - short) can you run?
- 13 She will get a (medal - race - winner).
- 14 How (big - far - much) can she jump?
- 15 I do (exercise - race - hard) every day.

⌚ Choose the correct word. (Language)

- 1 Amira (will - won't - isn't) get a medal. She can't jump high.
- 2 I like (throw - throws - throwing) the ball.
- 3 They will (wins - win - winning) the competition.
- 4 Youssef ran three races today. He (won't - is - will) be tired.
- 5 I don't like throwing the ball (or - but - so) jumping.
- 6 Ali jumped the (farthest - far - farther).
- 7 I like helping Khalil (because - so - but) he's my friend.
- 8 (Listen - Listens - Listening) to your friend's ideas.
- 9 Sara wanted to try harder (so - but - because) she came second.
- 10 Will it (is - be - are) a good competition?
- 11 Who will (wins - winning - win) the race?
- 12 Who is the (tall - tallest - taller) athlete?
- 13 Kareem is (older - oldest - old) than Sherif.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 They are wearing | a to help a friend. |
| 2 Will they be tired? | b be happy. |
| 3 The winner will | c red and black T-shirts. |
| 4 "Support a friend" is | d No, they won't. |

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

Read and match.

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 Did she win her last race? | a Yes, I do. |
| 2 Never tell your friend's | b secrets to others. |
| 3 Do you enjoy running? | c win the race? |
| 4 Who will | d No, she didn't. |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Today we're at the track. There are many athletes. They are training for a running competition. My friends and I are running, too. Sara runs faster than Ali. But Toka is the fastest. Mohamed likes jumping. He can jump really high. We have fun together.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- There are many (teachers - girls - athletes) training at the track.
- Mohamed likes (jumping - throwing - swimming).

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where are you today?
- Who is the fastest of your friends?

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



like - long jump



support - friends



came - first



athletes - running

7 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- 1 they - Will - tired - be - ?
- 2 big - There's - a - event - sports - .
- 3 high - How - can - he - jump - ?
- 4 was - Who - fastest - the - ?
- 5 it - be - Will - competition - a good - ?
- 6 sport - Which - easy - is - do - you - think - ?
- 7 running - I - like - jumping - and - .
- 8 do - you - win - Who - think - will - ?
- 9 your - Listen - ideas - to - friend's - .

Unit (2)

Body matters

Vocabulary

body
skeleton
skull
ribs
bone
jaw
elbow
knee
muscles
brain
heart
lungs
stomach

جسم
هيكل عظمي
جمجمة
ضلع
عظمة
فك
مرفق / كوع
ركبة
عضلات
مخ
القلب
الرئتان
المعدة

veins
arteries
tongue
saliva
digestion
blood
knee pads
helmet
cycling
running
sleep
climb a mountain

الأوردة
الشرايين
اللسان
اللغاب
الهضم
الدم
واقى الركبتين
خوذة
ركوب الدراجات
الجري
ينام
يتسلق جبلاً



Phonics

Long

"oo" / u: /



food
طعام



mood
حالة مزاجية



room
حجرة



moon
القمر



tool
أداة

Short
"oo"/u/



book
كتاب



cook
يطبخ



good
جيد



foot
قدم



wood
خشب

Conjugation of verbs

Present

pump
travel to
control
happen
protect
lift
carry
chew
swallow
look after
attach
damage
know
keep
beat

Past

بضخ pumped
ينتقل إلى traveled to
يتحكم في controled
يحدث happened
يحمي protected
يرفع lifted
يحمل carried
يمضغ chewed
يبتلع swallowed
يعتني بـ looked after
يربط attached
يضر - يدمر damaged
يعرف knew
يحفظ / يحافظ على kept
(يلهض - يدق) beat

P.P

pumped
traveled to
controled
happened
protected
lifted
carried
chewed
swallowed
looked after
attached
damaged
known
kept
beaten

Future with "going to" زمن المستقبل باستخدام

Usage

We use "be going to" to talk about things we intend to do.

نستخدم be going to عند الحديث عن الأشياء التي ننوي فعلها.

Form

I

+ am

He / She / It / Singular noun + is + going to + inf. ..

We / You / They / Plural noun + are

e.g. I am going to wear a helmet.



e.g. She is going to go to bed early.



Keywords

tomorrow غدا today

اليوم

this (evening, ...)

tonight الليلة after (school, ...) (بعد المدرسة...)

هذا (المساء ...)

e.g. He is going to ride a horse tomorrow.



Negative

am not +

is not / isn't + **going to + inf. ...**

are not / aren't +

e.g. He **isn't** going to wear pads.

e.g. I'm **not** going to wear sunglasses.

(Yes / No) question

Is + **he / she / it / singular noun** + **going to + inf. ...?**

Are + **we / you / they / plural noun**

- Is she going to wear a helmet?

 - Yes, she is.



- Are they going to go to bed?

 - No, they aren't.



Wh-question

is **he / she / it / singular noun**

What + + **going to + inf. ...?**

are **we / you / they / plural noun**

e.g. What are you going to do today?

I'm going to go to the park after school.



Help your child revise unit (2).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية.



Activities on unit (2)

1 Look and complete.



s _ u _ l



sk _ le _ on



l _ gs



b _ o _ d



k _ e _



b _ n _



m _ sc _ e



h _ a _ t



e _ b _ w



h _ l _ et



s _ nsc _ een



s _ om _ ch

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

b _ n



h _ e _ r



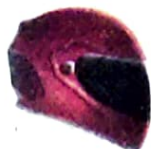
a _ t

s _ l



n _ u _ g

e _ h _ e



k _ s



n _ i

b _ n _ a



i _ r

m c

b l i



b o

o k



l u s

k l



3 Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

- 1 Your heart (beats - eats - takes) about 70 times a minute.
- 2 Our (heart - skull - skeleton) helps us move and makes us strong.
- 3 We need (helmets - nutrients - rocks) to help us grow.
- 4 He is going to wear (sunburn - sunscreen - pads) to protect him from the sun.
- 5 I skip breakfast. I'm always (bad - safe - hungry).
- 6 I feel (happy - positive - tired) and cross.
- 7 Our (skin - elbow - nose) is the largest organ in our body.
- 8 We can get (sunscreen - sunglasses - sunburn) from the sun.
- 9 We make food smaller with our (eyes - teeth - skull).
- 10 It's (bad - sad - important) to wear sunscreen to protect our skin.
- 11 We have a liquid called (water - saliva - tea) in our mouth.
- 12 When our food is smaller, we can (drink - help - swallow) it.

Choose the correct word. (Language)

- 1 I'm (going - goes - go) to wear a helmet.
- 2 Is (you - they - she) going to climb a mountain?
- 3 We are going to (drink - drank - drinks) water after we go running.
- 4 She (am not - isn't - aren't) going to play tennis after school.

Unit (2)

- 5 (Am - Is - Are) they going to play tennis after school?
- 6 We (am - is - are) going to watch TV.
- 7 Is he going to (goes - going - go) to bed early?
- 8 They (don't - aren't - isn't) going to play football.
- 9 She (am - is - are) going to swim in the pool.
- 10 I'm going (to - too - two) go to the park after school.
- 11 Are (he - she - you) going to play video games?
- 12 Hany and Rana (is - are - am) going to go for a walk.
- 13 No, (he - I - they) isn't going to wear pads.
- 14 I'm going to (having - has - have) chicken.
- 15 He is going to ride his bike (yesterday - today - last week).

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Are they going to watch TV? | a No, he isn't. |
| 2 We need nutrients | b It's a gas. |
| 3 Is he going to drink water? | c Yes, they are. |
| 4 What is oxygen? | d to help us grow. |
| 1- () | 2- () |
| | 3- () |
| | 4- () |

Read and match.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 She's going to wear pads | a our top layer of skin. |
| 2 Water can't get through | b No, he isn't. |
| 3 Is he going to ride a horse? | c from the sun. |
| 4 We can get sunburn | d to protect her elbows. |
| 1- () | 2- () |
| | 3- () |
| | 4- () |

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Our skeleton is all the bones that keep us strong and help us move. We need muscles to move our bones. Muscles are attached to bones and they lift and turn bones so we can walk, run, dance - anything! When we kick a ball, muscles make the bones in our leg and knees move. Muscles in our arms and elbows move when you play tennis. We use muscles when we chew food, to move the jaw bone up and down. Bones are hard, and they protect our soft organs. Our brain, heart and lungs are important organs that need to be safe.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- ① We need (muscles - elbows - hearts) to move our bones.
- ② Bones are (soft - hard - interesting).

B) Answer the following questions.

- ③ What is the skeleton?
- ④ What do bones protect?

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



going - breakfast



chew - teeth



climb - mountain



skeleton - move

7 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- 1 carry - from - Veins - the heart - blood - to - the body - .
- 2 go to - the - I'm - park - going to - .
- 3 chew - teeth - with - We - food - our - .
- 4 our - protect - We - body - need to - .
- 5 a - is - gas - Oxygen - .
- 6 going - ride - to - She's - a horse - .
- 7 breakfast - Do - ever - you - skip - ?
- 8 water - going - We're - drink - to - .
- 9 he - going - Is - wear - to - sunscreen - ?
- 10 play - you - every - Do - day - outside - ?

8 Complete the following dialogue with.

nice - beach - swim - going

- Sara : Where are you going?
- Amira : I'm going to the 1) _____ .
- Sara : What are you 2) _____ to do there?
- Amira : I'm going to 3) _____ in the sea.
- Sara : Have a 4) _____ time.
- Amira : Thank you.

Unit (3)

What's on your plate?

Vocabulary

nutrients
protein
carbohydrates
vitamins
calcium
fruit
vegetables
sugar
zeer pot
container
jar
drying
temperature
fiber

عناصر غذائية
بروتين
كربوهيدرات
فيتامينات
كالسيوم
فاكهة
خضروات
سكر
زير / إناء خزفي
وعاء
برطمان
تجفيف
درجة الحرارة
ألياف

minerals
fats
dairy
sodium
cereal bar
dried fruit bar
chocolate
hydrated
dehydrated
soda
delicious
sweat
percent

المعادن
الدهون
منتجات الألبان
صوديوم
قطعة حبوب
قطعة فاكهة مجففة
شيكولاتة
مشبع بالماء
غير مشبع بالماء / جاف
مياه غازية
لذيذ
يعرق - العرق
نسبة مئوية %



Phonics

tion

/ʃn/



fiction
قصص / خيال



fire station
محطة إطفاء



digestion
الهضم



pollution
التلوث



nutrition
تغذية

Help your child revise unit (3).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	P.P
remember	يتذكر remembered	remembered
contain	يحتوي على contained	contained
exercise	يتمرن exercised	exercised
decide	يقرر decided	decided
mix	يخلط mixed	mixed
measure	يقيس measured	measured
taste	يتذوق tasted	tasted
preserve	يحفظ preserved	preserved
store	يخزن stored	stored
heat	يسخن heated	heated
close	يغلق closed	closed
add	يضيف added	added
keep	يحافظ على kept	kept
think	يفكر thought	thought
give	يعطي gave	given
sleep	ينام slept	slept
mean	يعني - يقصد meant	meant
lose	يفقد - يخسر lost	lost
come	يأتي came	come
choose	يختار chose	chosen

Language

should / shouldn't

We use **should / shouldn't** for **advice**.

نستخدم (ينبغي / ينبغي ألا) لإعطاء النصيحة.

Affirmative

الإثبات

Subject + **should** + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. You **should** eat a healthy lunch every day.



Negative

النفي

Subject + **should not (shouldn't)** + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. You **shouldn't** eat cookies every day.



(Yes / No) question

Should + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

e.g. **Should** he eat some food with carbohydrates?



Yes, he should.



No, he shouldn't.



Activities on unit (3)

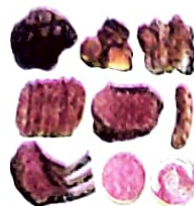
1 Look and complete.



veg_tabl_s



f_u_t



prot__n



d__ry



f_b_r



carb_h_drates



dig_sti_n



nutr__nts



del_c_ous



s_g_r



cer_al b_r dr_ed fru_t b_r



2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

i c i f



t n o

p l u o



t l n o i

e i f r t



s i n o t a

u i n e



t n r t s

o i g i s



d e t n

s t



l a

3 Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

- 1 There are many (fats - vitamins - carbohydrates) in fruit.
- 2 Vitamins, protein and fiber are (minerals - nutrients - fruits).
- 3 Milk and cheese are in the (fruits - vegetables - dairy) section.
- 4 Oil and butter have (fiber - fats - protein).
- 5 We can get (protein - carbohydrates - minerals) from bread, pasta, rice and cereal.
- 6 Fruit has (fats - fiber - minerals).
- 7 (Protein - Vitamin - Calcium) is good for our bones.
- 8 Your body is (hydrated - dehydrated - oxygenated) when it doesn't get enough water.
- 9 Your body is (dried - hydrated - dehydrated) when it gets enough water.
- 10 We measure energy in (grams - calories - meters).
- 11 We use (meters - grams - calories) to measure a nutrient.
- 12 50% is read as fifty (cent - percent - present).
- 13 I ate a chocolate (can - jar - brownie) this morning.
- 14 I like to eat a cereal (jar - can - bar).
- 15 (Hydrated - Dehydrated - Dried) fruit bars have natural sugar.
- 16 (Calories - Vitamins - Protein) are the amounts of energy in food.
- 17 We need (nutrients - electricity - containers) to store food in a fridge.
- 18 We can store food in (nutrients - electricity - containers).
- 19 Vitamin C is (good - bad - worried) for our skin.
- 20 He wants to have a healthy (night - light - diet).

Choose the correct word. (Language)

- ① We (should - shouldn't - doesn't) eat a healthy lunch every day.
- ② We (should - shouldn't - does) drink 3 litres of water a day.
- ③ You should (does - doing - do) sports every day.
- ④ (Do - Should - Is) she sleep for four hours tonight?
- ⑤ Should he drink water? - Yes, he (should - shouldn't - does).
- ⑥ No, you (should - shouldn't - not should) stay up late.
- ⑦ Should we (plays - playing - play) video games?
- ⑧ You shouldn't (eat - eats - eating) cookies every day.
- ⑨ (Yes - No - Not), he shouldn't watch too much TV.
- ⑩ (He should - Should he - Should) eat lots of candies?

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| ① Carbohydrates | g is found in cakes, biscuits and soda. |
| ② Fats | b are found in butter and oils. |
| ③ Sugar | c is found in meat, fish and eggs. |
| ④ Protein | d are found in bread, pasta and rice. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

Read and match.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| ① We should | a eat too much chocolate. |
| ② We shouldn't | b eat healthy food. |
| ③ Natural sugar | c the parts of your body that move. |
| ④ Joints are | d is in fruit. |

1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

We can preserve food by keeping it cold. Fridges and freezers keep our food cold. We can smoke food over a fire to make it last longer. And we can preserve food with salt. Salt takes out the water. We can dry fruit in the sun. When we dry fruit, it takes out the water and keeps all the nutrients. We can store food in pots. In the past, people used zeer pots. They put food in a ceramic pot. Then they put the pot inside a bigger pot. They put sand between the two pots. Then they added water. The water in the sand keeps the food cool. Today, we store food in cans and jars, with water and salt.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 We can keep food (hot - cold - bad) in fridges and freezers.
- 2 You can preserve food with (sugar - salt - lemon).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where can we store food?
- 4 What keeps food cool in zeer pots?

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



fruit - vitamins



should - fruit juice



shouldn't - candies



like - dried fruit

7 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- 1 Hanaa - soda - shouldn't - drink - .
- 2 food - healthy - Hany - eat - should - .
- 3 cakes - he - Should - eat - of - lots - ?
- 4 brownie - I - chocolate - like - eating - .
- 5 bars - fruit - dried - I - like - .
- 6 heart - bad - Sugar - is - for - your - .
- 7 can - affect - mood - Sugar - your - .
- 8 sugar - I - eat - decided - to - less - .
- 9 protein - fish - meat - There's - in - and - .
- 10 cookies - I - like - .

8 Complete the following dialogue with.

Should - bad - balanced - vitamins

Ahmed : What should I do to stay healthy?

Omar : You should eat) meals.

Ahmed : 2) I eat fruit and vegetables?

Omar : Yes, they contain a lot of 3)

Ahmed : Can I eat sugar?

Omar : No. A lot of sugar is 4) for your health.

Unit (4)

In the wild

Vocabulary

fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك	cheetah	الفهد الصياد
squirrel	سنجاب	lion	أسد
mole	حيوان الخلد	sloth	دب الكسلان
chimpanzee	الشمبانزي	cobra	أفعى الكوبرا
spider monkey	القرود العنكبوت	owl	بومة
macaw	المكاو (بيقاء امريكي)	turtle	سلحفاة مائية
goose	إوزة	chase	يطارد
sea lion	أسد البحر	gather	يجمع
penguin	طائر البطريق	hide	يختبئ
crayfish	جراد البحر	hunt	يصطاد
take shelter	يتخذ مأوى / يحمي	desert	الصحراء
live in holes	يعيش في حفر	flood	فيضان
dig burrows	يحفر الجحور	rainforest	الغابة المطيرة
use sticks	يستخدم العصي	polar	قطبي
build a nest	يبني عش	drought	جفاف

-nt



hunt
يصطاد



tent
خيمة

-nd



grassland
أرض عشبية



wetland
أرض رطبة

-mp



swamp
مستنقع



camp
معسكر

Help your child revise unit (4).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	P.P
chase	يطارد chased	chased
gather	يجمع gathered	gathered
live	يعيش lived	lived
crawl	يزحف crawled	crawled
destroy	يدمر destroyed	destroyed
erupt	يثور erupted	erupted
build	يبني built	built
hide	يختبئ hid	hidden
dig	يحفر dug	dug

might / might not

Usage \

الاستخدام

We use "might" when we are not sure of something.

نستخدم might عند عدم التأكد من شيء ما.

Affirmative \

الإثبات

Subject + might + inf.

e.g. This animal might live in Africa.



Negative \

النفي

Subject + might not + inf.

e.g. This animal might not be able to swim.





Activities on unit (4)

1 Look and complete.



c_impan_ee



fen_ec f_x



s_a_l_on



t_rtle



g_assla_d



p_l_r



ca_p



te_



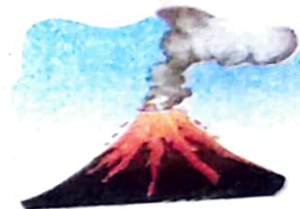
hu_



g__se



m_caw



vo_ca_o

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

a_m_a



c_w

b_c_r



o_a

t_s_l



o_h

e_n_w_t



a_d_l

u_p_i_n



n_g_e

h_e_a_c



h_t_e

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

51

Unit (4)

l f o

o d



u b l i

n d g i



e f

i r



3 Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

- 1 The rainforest top layer is called the (floor - emergent - canopy) layer.
- 2 Penguins gather in a large group called a (nest - colony - burrow).
- 3 Lots of birds (swim - build - climb) nests.
- 4 (A spider monkey - Crayfish - An Arctic fox) lives in the polar habitat.
- 5 (Macaws - Spider monkeys - Crayfish) live in dark, warm water and take shelter in tree roots.
- 6 The (equator - North Pole - South Pole) is an imaginary line all around the middle of the Earth.
- 7 (Polar - Tropical - Swamp) habitats are near the equator.
- 8 A lion can (fly - hunt - crawl) animals.
- 9 (Macaws - Sloths - Spider monkeys) have colored feathers.
- 10 Wolves have (feathers - fur - leaves).
- 11 There are (two - three - four) layers in the rainforest.
- 12 The (South Pole - North Pole - equator) is the point at the farthest north of the world.
- 13 Wetland can be near (deserts - the North Pole - a river).
- 14 Some animals live (close - far - under) to their habitats.

- 15 Sloths live in the (canopy - emergent - understory) layer.
- 16 It's very dark in the (floor - canopy - emergent) layer.
- 17 When there isn't enough water, this is called (flood - volcano - drought).
- 18 Snakes can (jump - crawl - run).
- 19 A (volcano - fire - flood) is an overflow of water.
- 20 (Building - Flood - Pollution) can be on land, in water, or in the air.

Choose the correct word. (Language)

- 1 This animal might not (eat - eats - eating) grass.
- 2 Elephants (might - not might - might not) swim. They are very big.
- 3 Birds might (builds - build - building) nests in trees.
- 4 How many eggs do you think there might (are - be - were)?
- 5 That animal might (living - lives - live) in Africa.
- 6 I'm not sure. It (is - be - might be) a big animal.
- 7 Penguins (might - don't - might not) be able to fly.
- 8 This insect might not (eat - eating - eats) grass.

4 Read and match.

- 1 Where do birds live?
- 2 It's very cold
- 3 Not many animals live
- 4 Lions hunt

- a in the North Pole.
- b other animals.
- c In nests in trees.
- d in the emergent layer.

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

 Read and match.

- 1 In the polar habitat, there
- 2 Macaws have
- 3 A swamp is a
- 4 A spider monkey eats

- a beautiful colorful feathers.
- b wetland.
- c fruit.
- d is snow and ice.

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



turtles - swamps



smoke - air



need - tent



Cheetahs - hunt



fennec fox - big ears



owls - holes

6 Read the passage then answer the questions.

When we visit a wildlife park, we learn how animals behave by watching what they do. In wildlife parks, animals live in places which are close to their natural habitats. But how do animals behave in the wild. Animals live in habitats where they can get food and water and live safely. Animals take shelter so they can stay warm, be safe from other animals, and protect their families.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 In wildlife parks, we learn how animals behave by (watching - hunting - climbing) them.
- 2 Animals take (house - shelter - park) to stay warm.

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where do animals live?
- 4 Why do animals take shelter?

7 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- 1 park - visited - I - a - wildlife - .
- 2 of - can - Thousands - live - penguins - together - .
- 3 and - Rabbits - burrows - foxes - dig - .
- 4 monkey - fruit - A spider - eats - .
- 5 have - colored - Wolves - light - fur - .
- 6 equator - sunshine - The - most - gets - the - .
- 7 habitats - in - What - know - do - Egypt - you - ?
- 8 live - the - Sloths - layer - in - canopy - .

Unit (5)

All about water

Vocabulary

oasis	واحة	lake	بحيرة
spring	ينبوع ماء	water cycle	دورة الماء
shade	ظل	evaporation	التبخّر
surface	سطح	condensation	التكثف
underground	تحت الأرض	precipitation	هطول الأمطار
hooves	خف (حوافر الجمل)	runoff	جريان المياه
vapor	بخار	fall	الخريف
liquid water	ماء سائل	winter	الشتاء
frozen	متجمد	spring	الربيع
land	الأرض / اليابسة	summer	الصيف
olive tree	شجرة الزيتون	acacia tree	شجرة السنط
date palm tree	النخلة	spearmint	النعناع
basil	نبات الريحان	tamarisk tree	شجرة الأثل / الطرفاء



Phonics

er

/ə/



river

نهر



water

ماء



shelter

ماوى

a

/ə/



cobra

افعى الكوبرا



acacia

شجرة السنط

ar
/ə/polar
قطبيor
/ə/doctor
طبيب

Conjugation of verbs

Present

Past

P.P

walk

يمشي

walked

walked

provide

يُمد

provided

provided

turn into

يتحول إلى

turned into

turned into

cause

يتسبب في

caused

caused

float

يُطفو

floated

floated

squeeze

يعصر

squeezed

squeezed

flow

يتدفق

flowed

flowed

heat

يُسخن

heated

heated

melt

يذوب

melted

melted

cool

يبرد

cooled

cooled

adapt to

يتكيف مع

adapted to

adapted to

survive

ينجو

survived

survived

sweat

يعرق

sweated

sweated

climb

يتسلق

climbed

climbed

swim

يسبح

swam

swum

eat

يأكل

ate

eaten

spread

ينتشر

spread

spread

Language

The present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Form

(I / We / You / They / plural noun) **have**
 (He / She / It / singular noun) **+ has + p.p** (التصريف الثالث)

e.g. I **have visited** an oasis with my family three times.

e.g. He **has climbed** a mountain.

Keywords

never	أبداً is used in negative.	تستخدم في النفي.
ever	من قبل is used in questions.	تستخدم في السؤال.

e.g. Have you **ever seen** a snake? - I **have never eaten** olives.

Negative

have **not** / haven't + p.p
 has **not** / hasn't

e.g. I **haven't visited** an oasis. - He **hasn't climbed** a mountain.

(Yes / No) question

Have (you / we / they / plural noun)
 Has (he / she / it / singular noun) + P.P ... ?

e.g. Have you **ever walked** in the desert?

Yes, I **have**.

No, I **haven't**.



Activities on unit (5)

1 Look and complete.



sh_d_



b_s_l



o__is



l_k_



s_lt



doct__



shelt__



pr_cipit__tion



pol__



c_b_a



r_v_r



f_r

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

o d

o w



t w

e a r



r n

a i



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

Unit (5)

e



a k

r b a



c o

p o v

r a



ev li



e r e

n g s



r i p

u h

m p



3 Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

- 1 Animals can take (shelter - dates - leaves) from the sun.
- 2 (Cow - Cobra - Lion) is a kind of snakes.
- 3 The sun causes (condensation - evaporation - precipitation).
- 4 Seas and oceans have (salt - fresh - frozen) water.
- 5 There are (five - six - four) seasons in the year in Egypt.
- 6 A cactus plant has thick (skin - leaf - flower).
- 7 Camels have (small - narrow - wide) hooves.
- 8 A cactus plant has (legs - spines - arms) to protect it.
- 9 The cheetah can (hunt - fly - swim).
- 10 We (put - got - swam) in the spring.
- 11 The desert is (cool - hot - cold), and dry.
- 12 At an oasis, there are lots of (rivers - lakes - springs).

3 Choose the correct word. (Language)

- 1 I (has - have - having) never eaten dates.
- 2 She has (visiting - visits - visited) an oasis.
- 3 We (has - have - having) climbed a mountain!
- 4 Has she (ever - never - every) done an experiment?
- 5 They have (eat - ate - eaten) lunch.
- 6 He has never (swim - swims - swum) in a lake.
- 7 Have you ever (climb - climbed - climbs) a mountain?
- 8 No, he has (ever - never - every) drunk coffee.
- 9 He (is - have - has) taken photos of the oasis.
- 10 We (have - are - do) seen a big lake.
- 11 (You have - Have you - Are you) ever seen a cobra?
- 12 They have never (walk - walks - walked) in the desert.
- 13 She (haven't - isn't - hasn't) tried swimming in the sea.
- 14 Have you visited Siwa? - Yes, I (have - has - do).
- 15 Has (you - he - we) ever made olive oil?

4 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Siwa Oasis is a very interesting place. It is in the desert. There are a lot of springs there. People can swim in these springs. The people there are very friendly. Siwa has lots of monuments. People grow dates and olives there. The dates and olives are sold to different countries all over the world.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Siwa is a very (boring - interesting - bad) place.
- 2 The people there are (friendly - bad - narrow).

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

B) Answer the following questions.

- ③ What does Siwa have?
- ④ Where can people swim?

5 Read and match.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| ① I have visited | a) seen a spring? |
| ② Have you ever | b) an oasis. |
| ③ He has climbed | c) never eaten dates. |
| ④ I have | d) a mountain. |
- 1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

Read and match.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| ① Siwa Oasis is | a) a big lake. |
| ② We have seen | b) in the desert. |
| ③ Have they ever made | c) swum in a spring. |
| ④ I've never | d) olive oil? |
- 1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

6 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- ① they - Have - cooked - oil - with - ?
- ② grow - in - People - spearmint - oasis - an - .
- ③ never - I've - eaten - dates - .
- ④ climbed - We - mountain - have - a - .
- ⑤ hot - The - dry - desert - and - is - .

6 minerals - Basil - vitamins - has - and - .

7 Cairo - They - visited - have - .

8 swimming - She - tried - hasn't - a lake - in - .

9 a small - The - is - Sea - Dead - sea - .

10 can - springs - People - in - swim - .

7 Complete the following dialogue with.

delicious - been - fresh - camel

Omar : Have you ever visited an oasis?

Ramy : Yes, I have 1) to Siwa.

Omar : What did you do there?

Ramy : I rode a 2)

Omar : Did you eat 3) dates?

Ramy : Yes, I did. They were 4)

8 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



climbed - mountain



never - olives

Unit (6)

What is a flood?

Vocabulary

flood
High Dam
barrier
canal
drain
shadoof
aqueduct
warn
desalination
wash away
meteorologist
turbine
waterwheel
pump
sandbags

فيضان
السد العالي
حاجز
ترعة / قناة
بالوعة
شادوف
قناة مائية
يُحذِر
تحلية المياه
يجرف
عالم أرصاد
توربين
نفاقية
مضخة
أكياس رمل

pipe
selfish
volunteer
install
minimize
protect
collapse
ruin
polite
bossy
calm
cooperative
lazy
brave
worried

داسورة
أناني
متطوع / يتطوع
يُنبت
يُقلل
يحمي
ينهار
يُدمر
مؤدب
متسلط
هادئ
متعاون
كسول
شجاع
قلقي



Phonics

-ous

/əs/



nervous
عصبي / متوتر



generous
كريم



enormous
ضخم / هائل



famous
مشهور



dangerous
خطير

Conjugation of verbs

Final revision

Present

Past

P.P

flood	يفيض
ruin	يُدمر
warn	يُحذّر
minimize	يُقلّل
collapse	ينهار
volunteer	يتطوع
rescue	ينقذ
irrigate	يروي / يسقي
spray	يرش

flooded
ruined
warned
minimized
collapsed
volunteered
rescued
irrigated
sprayed

flooded
ruined
warned
minimized
collapsed
volunteered
rescued
irrigated
sprayed

Language

Countable nouns

الأسماء التي تعد

They have singular and plural forms.

أسماء لها مفرد وجمع.



a tree - trees



a ruler - rulers



Uncountable nouns

الأسماء التي لا تعد

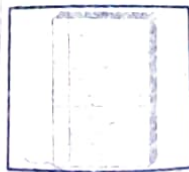
They don't have a plural form.

ليس لها صيغة جمع.

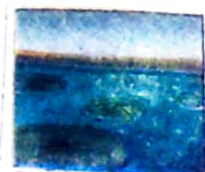
water



paper



rain



Help your child revise unit (6).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

too many

كثير جداً

تستخدم مع الأسماء التي تعد (جمع).

There are + too many + plural noun (اسم جمع)

There are too many rulers.

too much

كثير جداً

تستخدم مع الأسماء التي لا تعد.

There is + too much + (اسم لا يعد)

There is too much water.



not enough

غير كافٍ

تستخدم مع الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد.

There + isn't + enough (اسم لا يعد)
aren't + enough (اسم جمع)

There isn't enough water.



There aren't enough pencils.





Activities on un

1 Look and complete.



l _ _ y



gen _ _ ous



nerv _ _ _



fam _ _ s



enor _ ou _



wat _ rwhe _

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the

e r i r

a b r



n a

l c a



s p o l

a c l e



n a g

r c i



h f d

a s o o



p i

e p



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Baher - Connect Ph

3 Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

- 1 In a flood, people put up a (pipe - barrier - drain) to stop water in the street.
- 2 A (dam - drain - pump) stops water in a river.
- 3 (Collapse - Ruin - Predict) is to damage or destroy something.
- 4 (Predict - Protect - Warn) is to say what might happen in the future.
- 5 Meteorologists are people who study the (food - weather - problem).
- 6 (Warn - Install - Minimize) is to make something smaller or less.
- 7 Barriers can (predict - protect - collapse) buildings.
- 8 Fares often thinks about himself, he is (brave - selfish - mean).
- 9 She likes giving people presents. She is (calm - moody - generous).
- 10 The famous statue is (dangerous - enormous - generous).
- 11 A (volunteer - bossy - funny) person likes telling people what to do.
- 12 He always says "thank you"! He's very (polite - unkind - mean).

4 Choose the correct word. (Language)

- 1 There is too (many - much - enough) water.
- 2 There are too (enough - much - many) cars.
- 3 There isn't (many - enough - too many) water.
- 4 There aren't (much - enough - too much) cups.
- 5 There are (too much - much - too many) rulers.
- 6 There are (too much - too many - much) pencils.
- 7 There aren't (too much - much - enough) apples.
- 8 There isn't (too many - many - enough) juice.
- 9 There is (to - too - two) much water on the floor.
- 10 There aren't (much - too much - enough) eggs.
- 11 They have too (many - much - enough) money.
- 12 I have got too (enough - many - much) books in my bag.
I can't carry it.

4 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Meteorologists are people who study the weather. They can watch what is happening and predict when floods will start. They can warn people to put up barriers or use sandbags to keep their homes safe. They can send these warnings on cell phones, so everyone gets them quickly.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 Meteorologists can (protect - predict - minimize) when floods will start.

2 Meteorologists study the (money - weather - food).

B) Answer the following questions.

3 How can meteorologists send warnings?

4 Why do people put up barriers?

5 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



dam - river



generous - presents



too many - trees



statue - enormous



waterwheels - irrigation



caring - look after

6 Read and rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

- 1 are - There - many - too - apples - .
- 2 in - water - A dam - a river - stops - .
- 3 protect - can - Barriers - buildings - .
- 4 is - Collapse - fall - to - down - .
- 5 paper - isn't - There - enough - .
- 6 hard - works - He - very - .
- 7 is - The - statue - enormous - !
- 8 is - the - What - with - problem - irrigation - ?
- 9 Dam - is - Why - Aswan - the - famous - ?
- 10 with - help - Waterwheels - can - irrigation - .

7 Complete the following dialogue with.

much - When - flood - lightning

- Huda : Have you ever seen a 1) ?
- Reem : Yes, there was one in Egypt.
- Huda : 2) was it?
- Reem : It was in 2020.
- Huda : Were there thunderstorms and 3) ?
- Reem : Yes. There was too 4) water, too.



Activity



1 Look and complete.



ju _ _



athl _ t _



m _ d _ l



thr _ _

2 Complete the following dialogue with:

first - track - race - was

Omar : Were you at the) ?

Ramy : Yes, I 2)

Omar : Who won the 3) ?

Ramy : Ahmed came 4) and won.

3 Choose the correct word.

1 They win the competition. They (won't - will - do) be happy.

2 A/An (day - second - hour) is shorter than a minute.

3 Rana is the (fast - faster - fastest) runner.

4 Miss Mona is (racing - measuring - competing) how far you jumped.

4 Read and match.

1 How far can he jump?

2 Will she be happy?

3 Who was the slowest?

4 How many goals did he score?

a) Dina was the slowest.

b) Three goals.

c) Yes, she will.

d) He can jump three meters.

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Fares and Tarek are athletes. They do a lot of exercise. They want to compete in the school long jump competition. They want to win medals. They competed last year but they didn't win. They know they need to try harder this year. They come to the track three times a week.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Fares and Tarek are (teachers - athletes - doctors).
- 2 They want to win (toys - tracks - medals).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Did Fares and Tarek win last year?

- 4 How often do they come to the track a week?

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



can - high



athletes - track

7 Copy the following sentence.

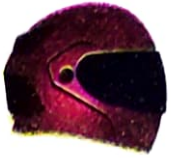
I like throwing.



Activity

2

1 Look and complete.



h_lme_



cl_mb



skel_t_n



l_gs

2 Complete the following dialogue with:

park - am - ride - going

- Ahmed : Where are you 1) _____ ?
 Reem : To the 2) _____ .
 Ahmed : Are you going to 3) _____ your bike?
 Reem : Yes, I 4) _____ .

3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 Our heart (runs - beats - moves) 70 times a minute.
- 2 I'm going to (wear - wears - wearing) sunglasses.
- 3 Blood is a (gas - liquid - solid).
- 4 (Are - Am - Is) he going to wear pads?

4 Read and match.

- 1 He's going to go
- 2 She's going to
- 3 It's very sunny. I'm
- 4 What do muscles do?

- a go swimming.
- b going to wear sunglasses.
- c They help us move.
- d to the library.

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the passage then tick (✓) or (×).

Our skin is the largest organ in our body, and it's very important. It protects us from the sun, as well as from dirt and germs. It keeps you cool in hot weather, and warm in cold weather. We need to look after our skin to keep it healthy.

- 1 Our skin is the smallest organ in our body. ()
- 2 The skin protects us from the sun. ()
- 3 The skin keeps you cold in cold weather. ()
- 4 We should look after our skin. ()

6 Fill in the spaces with:

should - nests - far - Blood

- 1 How can he jump?
- 2 is a liquid that carries oxygen and nutrients around the body.
- 3 You drink much water.
- 4 Some birds build in trees.

7 Copy the following sentence.

Drinking water is healthy.



Activity

3

1 Look and complete.



s_g_r



veg_t_bles



f_b_r



d_i_y

2 Complete the following dialogue with:

healthy - unhealthy - fats - should

- Heba : What 1) I eat to keep fit?
 Hana : You should eat 2) food.
 Heba : Can I eat 3) ?
 Hana : No, they are 4)

3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 Dairy foods have a (protein - mineral - vitamin) called calcium.
- 2 There is sugar in (cakes - fish - pizza).
- 3 We should (gets - get - getting) enough sleep.
- 4 You (should - isn't - shouldn't) skip breakfast.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 What does he have for lunch? | a They make us strong. |
| 2 Does Hany like fruit? | b Fish and rice. |
| 3 Why do we need vitamins? | c Every day . |
| 4 How often do you drink juice? | d Yes, he does. |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Children should drink about 1.5 litres of water every day. Most of this should be pure water, but we can also get water from other drinks such as milk, tea and fruit juices, and fruits and vegetables. We should drink more water in hot weather, because we lose water when we sweat.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 Most of water we drink should be (hot - pure - cold).
- 2 We lose water when we (sweet - eat - sweat).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 How much water should children drink every day?
- 4 When should we drink more water?

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences.

- 1 should - You - a healthy - eat - lunch - .

- 2 might - live - It - Africa - in - .

- 3 never - eaten - I've - olives - .

7 Copy the following sentence.

You shouldn't eat fats.



Activity

4

1 Look and complete.



ch _ m _ anzee



m _ c _ w



c _ b _ a



n _ t

2 Complete the following dialogue with:

slowly - wildlife - tomorrow - sloth

Samy : Where are you going to go 1) _____ ?

Noha : To the 2) _____ park.

Samy : Will you see the 3) _____ ?

Noha : Yes. It moves very 4) _____.

3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 The (sloth - cheetah - turtle) is the fastest animal.
- 2 A turtle might (take - takes - taking) shelter under a rock.
- 3 The equator is (cooler - colder - hotter) than the North Pole.
- 4 It lives in rivers. It (can't - might - is) be a fish.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 An owl lives | a a group called a colony. |
| 2 A penguin lives in | b moves very slowly. |
| 3 A turtle | c Wetland and desert. |
| 4 Which habitats are in Egypt? | d in a hole in a tree. |

1- () 2- () 3- () 4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

A habitat is a place with a particular kind of climate and landscape. There is snow in a polar habitat. There aren't any trees and the plants are small. Some animals take shelter in burrows. Rainforests are warm and wet places. They are in tropical parts of the world. The trees grow a lot of fruit for animals to eat.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 There is (rain - snow - heat) in a polar habitat.
- 2 Rainforests are (warm - cool - cold) and wet places.

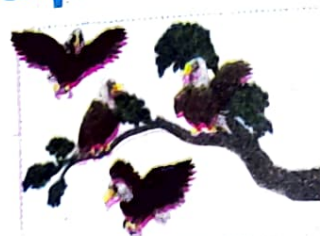
B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What is a habitat?
- 4 Where are rainforests?

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



North Pole - cold



birds - nests

7 Copy the following sentence.

You should do a lot of exercise.



Activity

E

1 Look and complete.



spr _ _ g



r _ v _ r



cond _ ns _ tion



p _ lm t _ ee

2 Complete the following dialogue with:

Siwa - delicious - fresh - ever

Ahmed : Have you 1) been to an oasis?

Huda : Yes, I visited 2)

Ahmed : Did you eat 3) dates there?

Huda : Of course. They were very 4)

3 Choose the correct word.

① We have (see - sees - seen) lots of tamarisk trees.

② We can get oil from (olive - acacia - tamarisk) trees.

③ Trees give us (medicine - protection - food) from storms in the desert.

④ Have you (ever - every - never) drunk coffee?

4 Read and match.

① Has she ever been to an oasis?

a) in the desert.

② He has climbed

b) the polar zone.

③ It doesn't often rain

c) Yes, she has.

④ There is ice in

d) a mountain.

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

There are many different plants and trees at an oasis. They make the oasis a special place. The desert is hot, and the trees and plants give people food, medicine and shade. Farmers grow tall date palm trees. They can sell dates in Egypt and all over the world. We can cook with dates or eat them. People also use the leaves of date palm trees to make baskets.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- ① Plants and (cars - trees - desert) make the oasis a special place.
- ② The desert is (cold - rainy - hot).

B) Answer the following questions.

- ③ What do farmers grow at an oasis?

- ④ What can we do with dates?

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences.

- ① you - Have - visited - ever - oasis - an - ?

- ② is - water - There - much - too - .

- ③ she - Is - to - going - mountain - the - climb - ?

7 Copy the following sentence.

A surgeon does an operation.



Activity

6

1 Look and complete.



s_n d b a_s



p_p_s



bar_i_r



p_p

2 Complete the following dialogue with:

enough - buy - many - cake

- John : Can you help me make a 1) _____ ?
- Ann : Sure. Are there 2) _____ eggs?
- John : No. How 3) _____ eggs do we need?
- Ann : We need four.
- John : Well. Let's 4) _____ them at the supermarket.

3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 A (dam - drain - pipe) stops the flow of water in a river.
- 2 There is too (many - more - much) sugar in my tea.
- 3 There aren't enough (milk - trees - water) in the park.
- 4 (Protect - Ruin - Damage) means to keep something safe.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 Sara tells a lot of jokes. | a He is cooperative. |
| 2 He likes talking to people. | b She is funny . |
| 3 Wael works in a team. | c She is generous. |
| 4 Nesma gives people things. | d He is sociable. |
- 1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the passage then tick (✓) or (✗).

A new way of farming in dry countries is hydroponic farming. This is a modern technology that is useful in dry countries. It uses only water, not soil, to grow plants. The special water contains the minerals that the plant needs. This system uses less water than traditional farming.

- 1 Hydroponic farming is an old way. ()
- 2 Hydroponic farming is useful in dry countries. ()
- 3 It uses water and soil to grow plants. ()
- 4 This system uses less water than traditional farming. ()

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



High Dam - famous



enough - water

7 Copy the following sentence.

You should be polite.



Activity

7

1 Look and complete.



th _ o _



tra _ _



t _ m _ r



c _ d _

2 Complete the following dialogue with:

jump - swimming - sport - don't

Sara : Do you like 1) _____ ?

Rana : No, I 2) _____

Sara : What 3) _____

Rana : I like long 4) _____ do you like?

3 Choose the correct word.

1 There is a big sports (race - event - runner) **today**.

2 Do you think she will (win - wins - winning)?

3 100 meters is a long (team - jump - distance).

4 She was happy (so - because - but) **she came first**.

4 Read and match.

1 Good friends never

2 He got a medal, so

3 Salma wants to win

4 Good friends should

1- ()

2- ()

a support each other

b the 100 meters

c he is happy

d spread rumour

3- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Then tick (✓) or (✗).

Today. There's a big sports event. Lots of
schools are competing. They are wearing
black. There are competitions in running,
I'm watching the long jump. I think the
will win. He is very fast.

Today.

Competitions in swimming.

Long jump.

Red is very fast.

()

()

()

()

Write a sentence under each picture.



exercise - every day

Write a sentence.

She likes swimming.

Three sets of horizontal lines for writing, each consisting of a solid top line, a dashed middle line, and a solid bottom line.

1 Look and complete.



br _ _ n



m _ sc _ e



bl _ _

2 Complete the following dialogue with

cups - unhealthy - skip

Ali : Do you ever 1)

Omar : No, It's 2)

Ali : How 3)

Omar : I have six 4)

3 Choose the correct word.

1 Bones are (soft - hard - fast).

2 They are (go - going - goes) to climb a

3 She's going to (skip - skips - skipping) h

4 Our (lungs - skeleton - heart) protects u

4 Read and match.

1 He's going to climb

2 Do you play outside?

3 Our skin keeps us

4 When our food is smaller,

a

b

c

d

3-

1- ()

2- ()

Read the passage then answer the questions.

It is important to eat healthy food. When we swallow food, it goes to our stomach. We get energy and nutrients from the food. But our bodies have to change the food so it can use it. It breaks down the food before it can absorb it. We chew food in our mouths, using our teeth, tongue and jaw. We need saliva to help us do this. This is a liquid made in our mouth.

Choose the correct answer.

It is important to eat (bad - unhealthy - healthy) food.

We chew food in our (mouths - stomach - tongue).

Answer the following questions.

What do we get from the food we eat?

What is saliva?

Fill in the spaces with:

penguin - eggs - gas - jump

A penguin can jump really high.

Gas is a

gas that comes from chickens.

A penguin lives in a large group called colony.

Copy the following sentence.

Sugar is bad for our teeth.



Activity



1 Look and complete.



cho_ol_te



del_ci_us.



dig_st_on



fr__t

2 Complete the following dialogue with:

milk - dairy - calcium - minerals

Sama : What are the 1)..... foods?

Amal : They are cheese, yogurt and 2).....

Sama : Do they have 3)..... in them?

Amal : Yes, they give us 4)..... which is good for our bones.

3 Choose the correct word.

1 Should she (drinks - drink - drinking) lots of water?

2 Pollution is (good - bad - healthy) for our health.

3 We shouldn't eat too much (vitamins - protein - sugar).

4 You (should - do - shouldn't) drink a lot of soda.

4 Read and match.

1 Are there vitamins in fruit?

2 Should I skip breakfast?

3 How do plants get water?

4 "Enough" means

a From the soil.

b the right amount.

c Yes, there are.

d No, you shouldn't.

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the passage then tick (✓) or (✗).

Younis is an athlete. He wants to have a healthy diet. He lives in a hot country and he does a lot of exercise. He's going to do a race tomorrow, so he needs lots of energy.

- 1 Younis is a firefighter.
- 2 He wants to have a healthy diet.
- 3 He's going to do a race tomorrow.
- 4 Younis needs lots of fats.

(	)
(	)
(	)
(	)

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences.

1 drink - water - Should - I - ?

2 was - It - monkey - a - spider - .

3 flood - a - What - is - ?

7 Copy the following sentence.

We should do exercise every day.



Activity

10

1 Look and complete.



s _ o _ h



b _ rr _ w



wetla _



ca _

2 complete the following dialogue with:

wild - go - see - park

- Soha : Where did you 1) _____ yesterday?
- Mona : We went to the wildlife 2) _____ .
- Soha : What did you 3) _____ there?
- Mona : We saw a lot of 4) _____ animals.

3 Choose the correct word.

- 1 The (polar - grassland - desert) habitat is the nearest to the equator.
- 2 (Flood - Ecosystem - Deforestation) is when people cut down forests.
- 3 I won't go out. It (can't - might - does) rain.
- 4 Lions and tigers might (live - lives - living) in Africa.

4 Read and match.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 Some birds build | a) in forests and grasslands. |
| 2 Rabbits and foxes | b) natural habitats. |
| 3 Fires can happen | c) nests in trees. |
| 4 Floods can destroy | d) dig burrows to live in. |
- 1-() 2-() 3-() 4-()

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Baher - Connect Plus (3) / First Term

5 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Lots of birds build nests in trees. They use grass, sticks and leaves. Other birds such as owls live in holes in trees. They don't make holes. They find them. Foxes and rabbits dig burrows in the ground. They can take shelter here. They dig in earth or sand.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- ① (Foxes - Rabbits - Owls) live in holes in trees.
- ② Rabbits take (grass - sticks - shelter) in burrows.

B) Answer the following questions.

- ③ Where do birds build nests?
- ④ What do birds use to build nests?

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



cheetah - fastest



Penguins - a colony

7 Copy the following sentence.

We should protect our world.

1 Look and complete.



chim__nzees



de__rt



o__is



sa__d__ags

2 Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

h e t e
h c a



e t
t n



i a r b
r e r



3 Complete the following dialogue with:

ridden - visited - haven't - have

- Mike : Have you ever (1) an oasis?
 John : Yes, I (2) been to Farafra.
 Mike : Have you (3) a camel?
 John : No, I (4)

4 Choose the correct word(s).

- ① We can make baskets from the leaves of (palm - tamarisk - acacia) trees.
- ② The (wetland - equator - polar zone) is an imaginary line around the middle of the earth.
- ③ I have (visit - visited - visits) the pyramids.
- ④ There aren't (much - too much - enough) apples.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read and match.

- 1 I loved seeing
- 2 Can I camp
- 3 He has
- 4 "Protect"

- a is to keep something safe.
- b climbed a mountain.
- c chimpanzees.
- d in a wetland?

1-()

2-()

3-()

4-()

6 Look and write a sentence under each picture.



climb - mountain.

2



Sara - funny

7 Read the passage, then answer the questions.

My aunt is very generous. I love her so much. She helps me with my homework. She always gives me enormous presents. She gave me a tent and an acacia tree. I liked the acacia tree so much. I visit my aunt every week. We are very happy .

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 My aunt gave me a tent and a/an (palm - acacia - tamarisk) tree.
- 2 My aunt is very (famous - generous - dangerous).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1 What does your aunt always give you?
- 2 What did you like so much?

Let's remember

Activities

2- Look and complete.

guitar lightning mountain bakery
River Nile fountain fisherman quiet
angry tired dolphin knot

3- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

oud rhino hippo
kind bored butcher

4- Choose the correct word.

1- reading 2- play 3- to
4- because 5- used 6- use

5- Read and match.

1- (d) 2- (a) 3- (b) 4- (c)

6- Circle the word with a different initial sound.

1- press 2- jump 3- clock
4- flood 5- Fred 6- play

7- Listen and circle the silent letter.

lamb wrist knot thumb

8- Unscramble.

- 1- How many people are traveling?
- 2- She went to the bakery to buy some bread.
- 3- I'm very interested in this website.
- 4- Where would you like to go?
- 9- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- He is excited. - He can ride a bike.

10- Fill in the spaces with:

1- used 2- Can 3- quickly 4- tired

Unit (1)

Lesson (1) Activities

1- Look and complete.

athlete track medal throw

jump distance race fast

complete win measure sports

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

distance race compete
track win jump
athlete throw medal

3- Choose the correct word.

1- athletes 2- throw 3- competed
4- medal 5- event 6- high
7- jump 8- distance 9- wins 10- What

4- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- The athlete is running.
- He is getting a medal.

5- Fill in the spaces with:

1- distance 2- throw 3- win
4- measuring 5- compete 6- jump

6- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- track 2- long
- 3- Red, blue, green and black.
- 4- The athlete wearing red.

7- Read and complete the dialog with:

1- sports 2- like 3- throwing 4- jumping
Lessons (2 & 3)

1- Choose the correct word. (P. 25)

1- be 2- get 3- won't
4- will 5- Will

2- Choose the correct word. (P. 27)

1- farther 2- farthest 3- than
4- the 5- higher 6- faster

Activities

1- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- do 2- jumping 3- How high 4- Who

Model Answers

2- Choose the correct word.

- 1-higher 2-be 3-farthest
4-faster 5-Will 6-slowest
7-faster 8-will be 9-win 10-will get

3- Read and match.

- 1-(c) 2-(a) 3-(d) 4-(b)

4- Unscramble.

- 1- How fast can he run?
2- Dina jumped higher than Lara.
3- Will they win the race?

5- Read and complete with the correct form.

- 1- will 2- will 3- be
4- higher 5- than 6- highest

Lessons (4 & 5)

- Choose the correct word. (P. 33)

- 1-and 2-because 3-but 4-so 5-or
6-but 7-because

Activities

1- Choose the correct word.

- 1-Which 2-and 3-so 4-often
5-and 6-or 7-because 8-but
9-so 10-try

2- Read and match.

- 1-(c) 2-(d) 3-(b) 4-(a)

3- Unscramble.

- 1- How often do you do sports?
2- I like running and jumping.

4- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1-athlete 2-third
3-He wants to win a medal.
4- Three times a week.

5- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- He likes running.
- She is eating healthy food.

Lesson (6) Activities

1- Read and match.

- 1-(c) 2-(d) 3-(a) 4-(b)

2- Choose the correct word.

- 1-tell 2-to 3-Support 4-apologize
5-fun 6-say 7-spread 8-pressure

3- Fill in the spaces with:

- 1-Support 2-apologized
3-Have 4-spread

4- Unscramble.

- 1- Listen to your friend's ideas.
2- Never pressure your friend.

5- Read and tick (✓) the good behavior.

- 2-✓ 3-✓ 5-✓

6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- Never tells your friend's secrets.
- Listen to your friend's ideas.

Lessons (7 & 8) Activities

1- Look and complete.

- race distance city
policeman citadel bicycle
pencil plastic carrot
face ice camel

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

- space music cold
coffee cookie mice

3- Unscramble.

- 1- We raced to the city on our bicycles.
2- They saw the citadel.
4- Look and write a sentence under each picture.
- She ate ice cream.
- We saw the citadel.

5- Circle the word with a different (c) sound.

- 1-city 2-ice 3-cake 4-race

Lessons (9 & 10) Activities

1- Choose the correct word.

- 1-set 2-footballer 3-goals
4-hour 5-centimeter 6-famous
7-longer 8-shorter 9-hours
10-meters

2- Read and match.

- 1-(c) 2-(d) 3-(a) 4-(b)

3- Unscramble.

1- Mohammed Salah plays for Liverpool.

2- A minute is longer than a second.

3- He set a world record.

4- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- English 2- 32

3- It's something which is the fastest, biggest, oldest or smallest in the world.

4- Football.

5- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- He is a footballer.

- A minute is longer than a second.

6- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- Where 2- going 3- watch 4- Who

Activities on Unit (1)

1- Complete the following dialogue with:

1-sports 2-jumping 3-Do 4-competitions

2- Look and complete.

distance athlete medal citadel

3- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

tired throw jump

4- Choose the correct word.

1-making 2-rumors 3-won't

4- the fastest

5- taller

5- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- The children are on the track.

- Never tell your friend's secrets.

6- Read and match.

1-(c) 2-(a) 3-(d) 4-(b)

7- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- water

2- friend

3- He was a lot happier.

4- He told Tamer's secret to Adam and Wael.

Unit (2)

Lessons (1&2) Activities

1- Look and complete.

heart skeleton bone

muscle skull lungs

arteries brain

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

skull lungs elbow

blood jaw knee

3- Choose the correct word

1- heart 2- brain 3- skeleton

4- blood 5- oxygen 6- Veins

7- lungs 8- vessels 9- muscles

10- hard 11- liquid 12- gas

13- without 14- ribs 15- jaw

16- skeleton 17- Arteries 18- muscles

19- soft 20- bones

4- Read and match.

1-(b) 2-(c) 3-(d) 4-(a)

5- Unscramble.

1- Our skeleton helps us move.

2- The heart is very important.

Model Answers

6- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- Veins 2- oxygen

3- Because it moves blood around the body.

4- Blood.

7- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

The heart is very important.

Bones are hard.

8- Fill in the spaces with:

1- Veins 2- Blood 3- nutrients

4- Arteries 5- blood vessels

9- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- morning 2- What 3- reading 4- skeleton

Lesson (3)

- Choose the correct word. (P. 68)

1- tomorrow 2- going 3- drink

4- is 5- She 6- Are

Activities

1- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- park 2- ride 3- play 4- time

2- Choose the correct word.

1- Are 2- 'm 3- wear 4- going 5- he

6- to 7- drink 8- isn't 9- Yes 10- tomorrow

3- Read and complete with the correct form.

1- wear 2- am 3- going 4- are

4- Unscramble.

1- I'm going to wear a helmet.

2- Is she going to wear pads?

3- He isn't going to go to the park.

Lessons (4&5) Activities

1- Look and complete.

sleep eat breakfast cycling

video games running watch TV

drink water eat fruit

3- Choose the correct word.

1- skip 2- stay 3- watching

4- do 5- sleep

4- Read and match.

1- (e) 2- (c) 3- (a) 4- (b) 5- (d)

5- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

I do exercise every day. - She feels tired.

6- Fill in the spaces with:

1- be positive 2- stay up late

3- an argument 4- skip breakfast

5- calm

7- Unscramble.

1- Do you ever skip breakfast?

2- How often do you drink water?

3- Fares likes watching sports.

4- I never skip breakfast.

Lessons (6 & 7) Activities

1- Look and complete.

food cook wood room

2- Look and complete with:

1- book 2- food 3- mood

3- Choose the correct word.

1- layer 2- feel 3- damage 4- sunscreen

5- cool 6- blood vessels 7- sunburn

4- Read and match.

1- (c) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (b)

5- Unscramble.

1- I've got a book about the moon.

2- Let's cook some food.

3- We can get sunburn from the sun.

6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- I wear sunscreen. - He eats healthy food.

7- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- cool 2- look after

3- Our skin 4- From the sun, dirt and germs.

8- Fill in the spaces with:

1- layers 2- important

3- Water 4- attaches

Lessons (8&9) Activities

1- Look and complete.

stomach tongue teeth mouth

2- Choose the correct word.

1- mouth 2- teeth 3- chew 4- saliva

5- swallow 6- stomach 7- down 8- absorb

3- Read and match.

1-(c) 2-(d) 3-(a) 4-(b)

4- Unscramble.

1- We chew food with our teeth.

2- It's important to eat healthy food.

3- We get energy from the food.

5- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

1- Saliva helps us chew food.

2- We chew food with our teeth and jaw.

6- Fill in the spaces with:

1- swallow 2- mouth 3- stomach 4- gets

Activities on Unit (2)

1- Look and complete.

heart skeleton lungs muscle

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- going 2- ride 3- wear 4- skull

3- Choose the correct word.

1- Is 2- skeleton 3- wear

4- skin 5- going

4- Read and complete with the correct form.

1- Is 2- are 3- isn't 4- am

5- Read and match.

1- (b) 2- (c) 3- (d) 4- (a)

6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- He is going to ride a horse.

- The heart is important.

7- Read the passage then answer the questions.

A- Choose

1- healthy 2- mouths

B- Answer

3- It goes to the stomach.

4- Energy and nutrients.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1) Activities

1- Look and complete.

carbohydrates vitamins protein

fats fiber sugar

vegetables dairy

2- Choose the correct word.

1- vitamins 2- good 3- Protein

4- mineral 5- bones 6- oils

7- carbohydrates 8- vitamins

9- sugar 10- cakes 11- meat

12- strong 13- dairy 14- nutrients

15- fruit

3- Read and match.

1- (c) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (b)

4- Read the passage then answer the questions.

A- Choose

1- Carbohydrates

2- rice

Model Answers

B- Answer

3- In olive oil and butter.

4- Because they give us energy and help us absorb some vitamins.

5- Unscramble.

1- There is protein in dairy foods.

2- I always have fruit at breakfast.

3- What does Hana have for lunch?

4- Does Hany like fruits?

6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- There are vitamins in fruit.

- Protein makes our bodies strong.

Lesson (2)

- Choose the correct word.

1- shouldn't 2- Should 3- should

4- shouldn't 5- skip

Activities

1- Fill in the spaces with:

1- shouldn't 2- drink 3- sugar 4- sleep

2- Choose the correct word.

1- drink 2- shouldn't 3- do

4- shouldn't 5- Should

3- Unscramble.

1- You shouldn't eat cookies every day.

2- Should he eat lots of cakes?

3- You should eat vegetables.

4- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- You should eat fruit every day.

- You shouldn't eat candies every day.

- You shouldn't drink too much soda.

- You should drink milk every day.

5- Read and write (T) or (F).

1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F

Lesson (3) Activities

1- Choose the correct word.

1- dehydrated 2- hydrated 3- toxins

4- sweat 5- temperature 6- Sweat

7- Toxins

3- Read and match:

1- (b) 2- (c) 3- (d) 4- (a)

4- Unscramble.

1- How much water do you drink?

2- You should drink pure water.

Lesson (4) Activities

1- Choose the correct word.

1- packaging 2- calories 3- Enough

4- percent 5- calories 6- sodium

2- Read and match.

1- (e) 2- (d) 3- (b) 4- (c) 5- (a)

3- Unscramble.

1- We shouldn't eat too much salt.

2- How much fiber do children need a day?

Lesson (5) Activities

1- Look and complete.

cake cereal bar chocolate dried fruit

2- Choose the correct word.

1- dried 2- brownie 3- bars

3- Read and match.

1- (c) 2- (a) 3- (b) 4- (d)

4- Unscramble.

1- Which snack is your favorite?

2- I like cereal bars. 3- I like dried fruit bars.

4- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- Cakes are my favorite snack.

- I like chocolate brownie.

6- Look and answer the questions below.

1- chocolate brownie 2- 68

3- The chocolate brownie.

4- The cake and the chocolate brownie.

Lesson (6) Activities

1- Look and complete.

digestion fire station

pollution

nutrition

2- Look at the pictures and insert the letters.

nutrition digestion fiction

pollution fire station

3- Look and complete with.

They are at the fire station.

There is a lot of pollution.

Lesson (7) Activities

1- Look and complete.

fire container can jar

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

salt drying zeer pot

3- Choose the correct word.

1- preserve 2- fire 3- salt

4- containers 5- zeer pots 6- dry

7- cans 8- jars 9- electricity

10- cans

4- Read and match.

1- (c) 2- (a) 3- (d) 4- (b)

5- Unscramble

1- It is important to eat the right food.

2- People use jars to preserve food.

3- We can dry fruit in the sun.

6- Read the text then answer the questions.

1- freezers

2- sick

Model Answers

3- They need electricity.

4- To keep it fresh and safe.

Lessons (8&9) Activities

1- Choose the correct word.

1- Sugar 2- damages 3- arteries

4- worried 5- energy 6- mood

7- brains 8- teaspoon 9- fruit 10- sugar

2- Read and match.

1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (a) 4- (b)

3- Unscramble

1- I decided to eat less sugar.

2- There is natural sugar in fruit.

3- Sugar is bad for our teeth.

4- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- plain 2- enjoy 3- At night. 4- Less sugar.

5- Look and write a sentence under each picture

- Sugar gives us energy.

- There is natural sugar in fruit.

Activities on Unit (3)

1- Look and complete.

vegetables dairy fats pollution

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- healthy 2- should 3- sugar 4- much

3- Choose the correct word.

1- should 2- shouldn't 3- healthy

4- Calcium 5- eat

4- Read the text then answer the questions.

1- nutrients 2- balance

3- Vitamins and minerals.

4- To work well and be healthy.

5- Look and write a sentence under each picture

1- We should eat fruit every day.

2- Sugar is bad for our teeth.

Model Answers

Review (1)

Activities on Review (1)

1- Look and complete.

medal pollution lungs food

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

heart athlete skull

3- Complete the following dialogue with:

1-exercise 2-bodies 3-should 4-balanced

4- Choose the correct word.

1-should 2-be 3-heart

4-skull 5-stomach

5- Read and match.

1-(d) 2-(c) 3-(a) 4-(b)

6- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1-snacks 2-heart

3-Yes, it is.

4-It stops them working as well as they should.

Unit (4)

Lessons (1&2) Activities.

1- Look and complete.

cheetah chimpanzee fennec fox

macaw sealion sloth

spider monkey cobra

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

lion crayfish turtle

owl penguin squirrel

3- Choose the correct word.

1-build 2-colony 3-Crayfish

4-hunt 5-dig 6-warm

7-Birds 8-shelter 9-Turtles

10-groups

4- Read and match.

1-(c) 2-(d) 3-(a) 4-(b)

5- Unscramble.

1- Penguins live together in a colony.

2- Rabbits and foxes dig burrows.

3- I visited a wildlife park.

6- Read the text then answer the questions.

1-watching 2-close

3- They can get water, food and live safely.

4- So they can stay warm, be safe and protect their families.

7- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- Rabbits dig burrows.

- The sloth moves very slowly.

8- Fill in the spaces with:

1-nests 2-gather 3-hide 4-hunt

9- Read and complete.

Dig a burrow: rabbit - fox

Build a nest: macaw - mole - birds

Lesson (3)

- Look at the pictures and complete with: (P. 148)

1-might not 2-might 3-might not 4-might

Activities

1- Complete the following dialogue with:

1-grass 2-biggest 3-whale 4-might not

2- Choose the correct word.

1-live 2-eat 3-not

4-might not 5-might

3- Unscramble.

1- Elephants might live in Africa.

2- It might not be able to swim.

3- Elephants might not swim in rivers.

Lesson (4)

1- Look and complete.

rainforest wetland grassland desert

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

grassland rainforest desert
equator polar wetland

3- Unscramble.

- 1- Wetland habitats are near the sea.
- 2- The equator gets the most sunshine.
- 3- A spider monkey eats fruit.

4- Choose the correct word.

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1- arctic fox | 2- North Pole | 3- polar |
| 4- rivers | 5- South Pole | 6- Macaws |
| 7- rainforest | 8- equator | 9- fur |
| 10- Crayfish | 11- snow | 12- warm |
| 13- wetland | 14- trees | 15- burrows |

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- equator
- 2- cold
- 3- Because it gets the most sunshine.
- 4- Because of the different climate and conditions.

6- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- rainforest
- 2- wetland
- 3- polar

Lessons (5&6) Activities

1- Look and complete.

swamp camp grassland
tent hunt wetland

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

tent wetland swamp
hunt camp grassland

3- Choose the correct word.

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1- emergent | 2- canopy | 3- undestory |
| 4- tent | 5- undestory | 6- hunt |
| 7- four | 8- dark | 9- leaves |

4- Read and match.

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1- (b) | 2- (c) | 3- (d) | 4- (a) |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|

5- Unscramble.

- 1- Can I camp in a wetland?
- 2- A rainforest is an amazing habitat.
- 3- Large animals hunt for food.

6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- 1- We need a tent to camp.
- 2- Cheetahs hunt for food.

7- Fill in the spaces with:

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|
| 1- emergent | 2- fruit | 3- sloths | 4- humid |
| 5- frogs | 6- forest floor | 7- sunlight | |

8- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- many
- 2- four
- 3- grassland
- 4- can't

Lesson (7)

1- Look and complete.

deforestation pollution building
volcano drought flood
fire ash

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

fire volcano flood
drought pollution building

3- Choose the correct word.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1- flood | 2- drought | 3- Pollution |
| 4- Deforestation | 5- pollute | |
| 6- disaster | 7- habitats | |

4- Read and match.

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1- (b) | 2- (c) | 3- (d) | 4- (a) |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|

5- Unscramble.

- 1- Floods can destroy natural habitats.
- 2- We put chemicals in river.
- 3- Water brings nutrients to the land.

6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- Farmers grow our food.
- Smoke pollutes the air.

Model Answers

7- Fill in the spaces with:

1- flood 2- Deforestation 3- Pollution

4- Building 5- volcano 6- fire 7- drought

8- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- nutrients 2- do 3- grow 4- protect

Activities on Unit (4)

1- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters

sloth desert flood

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- wildlife 2- chimpanzees

3- slowly 4- webcam

3- Choose the correct word.

1- hunt 2- dig 3- live

4- Rainforest 5- drought

4- Read and match.

1- (c) 2- (a) 3- (d) 4- (b)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- polar 2- white

3- The plants are small. 4- In burrows.

Unit (5)

Lessons (1&2) Activities

1- Look and complete.

palm tree olive tree shade oasis

lake surface soak spring

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

basil oasis lake

shade surface palm tree

3- Choose the correct word.

1- desert 2- baskets 3- springs

4- shade 5- grow 6- shelter

7- Basil 8- protection 9- spearmint 10- falls

4- Read and match.

1- (b) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (c)

5- Unscramble.

1- Farmers grow date palm trees.

2- People can grow spearmint in an oasis.

3- We swam in the spring.

6- Read the text then answer the questions.

1- spring 2- dry

3- For thousands of years.

4- With my family.

Lesson (3)

- Choose the correct word.

1- visited 2- has 3- ever

4- never 5- have

Activities

1- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- Siwa 2- have 3- mountain 4- haven't

2- Choose the correct word.

1- lived 2- climbed 3- ever

4- seen 5- have taken 6- hasn't

7- never 8- have 9- swum

10- has 11- she 12- ever

13- has never 14- Have 15- No

3- Unscramble.

1- Have you ever made olive oil?

2- I've never eaten olives.

3- She has climbed a tree.

4- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

1- I've never eaten dates.

2- He has climbed a mountain.

3- He has drunk coffee.

4- He has never visited an oasis.

Lessons (4) Activities

1- Look and complete.

runoff groundwater
condensation evaporation

2- Choose the correct word.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1- Precipitation | 2- runoff |
| 3- groundwater | 4- evaporation |
| 5- Condensation | 6- Groundwater |
| 7- rivers | 8- lake |

3- Read and match.

- 1- (b) 2- (a) 3- (d) 4- (c)

4- Unscramble.

- The sun turns water into vapor.
- A spring can become a river or a lake.
- Where does water come from?

5- Read and complete.

- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| 1- soaks | 2- groundwater |
| 3- spring | 4- cycle |

Lessons (5) Activities

1- Look and complete.

salt river sea
water frozen vapor

2- Choose the correct word.

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|---------|
| 1- frozen | 2- fresh | 3- salt |
| 4- float | 5- two | 6- land |

4- Unscramble.

- Water turns into vapor.
- The Dead Sea is surrounded by land.
- Ice is frozen water.

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- | | |
|----------|--------|
| 1- fresh | 2- two |
|----------|--------|

Model Answers

- Because rain washes minerals from the land and rocks.
- They go into the sea in runoff water.

6- Fill in the spaces with:

- | | |
|-----------|---------------|
| 1- frozen | 2- liquid |
| 3- small | 4- experiment |

Lessons (6&7) Activities

1- Look and complete.

cobra shelter water river
doctor acacia cactus cheetah

2- Look at the pictures and match.

- | | | |
|--------|---------|-------|
| hooves | cheetah | polar |
| hump | sand | roots |

3- Choose the correct word.

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1- under | 2- habitat | 3- adapted |
| 4- spines | 5- hollow | 6- wide |
| 7- skin | 8- fur | 9- humps |
| 10- tubes | 11- roots | 12- hair |

4- Read and match.

- 1- (b) 2- (a) 3- (d) 4- (c)

5- Fill in the spaces with:

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 1- habitat | 2- desert |
| 3- store | 4- camouflage |

6- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1- skin | 2- spread |
| 3- They can catch a lot of rainwater when it downfalls. | |
| 4- To protect them. | |

Lessons (8&9) Activities

1- Look and complete.

spring summer fall winter

2- Choose the correct word.

- | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------|
| 1- desert | 2- tropical | 3- wetland |
|-----------|-------------|------------|

Model Answers

4- polar 5- much 6- millimeters

3- Read and match.

1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (b) 4- (a)

4- Unscramble.

1- Some countries are closer to the equator.

2- There is less rain in the desert.

3- How much rainfall does Brazil have a year?

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- seasons 2- winter

3- Spring, summer, fall and winter.

4- These are countries closer to the equator in tropical zones.

Activities on Unit (5)

1- Look and complete.

spring oasis olive tree vapor

2- Look at the picture and unscramble the letters.

polar cobra river

3- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- ever 2- have 3- What 4- oasis

4- Choose the correct word.

1- desert 2- seen 3- Precipitation

4- salt 5- much

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- survive 2- humps

3- Because they have wide hooves.

4- To keep them warm at night.

6- Read and match.

1- (b) 2- (a) 3- (d) 4- (c)

7- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- A cactus has spines.

- There are palm trees in an oasis.

Unit (6)

Lessons (1&2) Activities

1- Look and complete.

barrier canal dam drain

pipe pump sandbags flood

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

canal dam pipe

drain pump sandbags

3- Choose the correct word.

1- sandbags 2- dam 3- drain

4- pipes 5- pump 6- canal 7- barrier

4- Read and match.

1- (b) 2- (c) 3- (d) 4- (a)

5- Unscramble.

1- The ports in Alexandria were closed.

2- Why do we need sandbags in a flood?

3- Barriers can protect buildings.

6- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- 2020 2- a lot

3- The airport in Luxor and the ports in Alexandria and Sharm el-Sheikh.

4- They were flooded.

7- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- flood 2- sandbags 3- keep 4- river

Lesson (3)

- Choose the correct word. (P. 223)

1- enough 2- too much 3- too many

4- enough 5- sugar

Activities

1- Choose the correct word.

1- too much 2- enough 3- too many

4- too many 5- pencils 6- enough

- 7- too 8- many 9- salt
10- cars 11- isn't 12- much
13- aren't 14- isn't 15- figs
16- many 17- much 8- coffee

2- Unscramble.

- 1- There are too many pencils.
- 2- There aren't enough rulers.
- 3- There is too much water.
- 4- There isn't enough milk.

3- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- There isn't enough water.
- There are too many trees.

Lesson (4) Activities

1- Look and complete.

warn meteorologist ruin protect
collapse install minimize wash away

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

ruin install collapse
warn protect wash away

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- Meteorologists 2- minimize 3- wash away
- 4- install 5- protect 6- ruin
- 7- collapse 8- warn 9- predict 10- Barriers

4- Read and match.

- 1- (c) 2- (d) 3- (b) 4- (a)

5- Fill in the spaces with:

- 1- ruin 2- minimize 3- protect 4- barrier

Lesson (5) Activities

1- Look and complete.

funny brave scared lazy
generous calm polite caring

Model Answers

2- Choose the correct word.

- 1- rescue 2- selfish 3- generous
4- Caring 5- brave 6- moody
7- wise 8- calm 9- polite

3- Read and match.

- 1- (c) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (b)

4- Unscramble.

- 1- Lara can rescue people from floods.
- 2- I like helping other people.

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- firefighters 2- pleased
- 3- When there is an emergency.
- 4- They used small boats.

6- Fill in the spaces with:

- 1- bossy 2- rescue 3- selfish 4- volunteer

7- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- emergency 2- rescue 3- scary 4- is

Lesson (6) Activities

1- Look and complete.

dangerous generous nervous
enormous famous

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

dangerous generous nervous

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- enormous 2- nervous
3- dangerous 4- famous

4- Unscramble.

- 1- The statue is enormous.
- 2- My teacher is kind and generous.
- 3- This woman is very nervous.

5- Look and write a sentence under each picture

Model Answers

1- The lion is dangerous.

2- The tree is enormous.

6- Fill in the spaces with:

1- generous 2- dangerous 3- enormous

Lesson (7)

Activities

1- Look and complete.

spray drip flood crop

2- Choose the correct word.

1- sunlight 2- water 3- less

4- pumps 5- hydroponic 6- minerals

3- Read and match.

1- (b) 2- (c) 3- (e)

4- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- pipes 2- Modern

3- Taking the salt out of sea water to get fresh water.

4- It uses a lot of energy.

5- Fill in the spaces with:

1- Waterwheels 2- Desalination

3- Use pumps. 4- To water their crops.

Lesson (8)

Activities

1- Choose the correct word.

1- Waterwheels 2- Waterwheels

3- aqueducts 4- oxen

5- famous 6- Desalination

2- Read and match.

1- (c) 2- (e) 3- (b) 4- (a) 5- (d)

3- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- less 2- desalination

3- Taking the salt out of sea water to get fresh water.

4- It uses a lot of energy.

4- Fill in the spaces with:

1- Waterwheels 2- Desalination

3- shadoof 4- aqueduct

5- Read and complete:

canal - tower - citadel

Turbines - electricity

Activities on Unit (6)

1- Look and complete.

pump sandbags rainfall dangerous

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- job 2- emergency 3- flood 4- injured

3- Choose the correct word.

1- barrier 2- collapse 3- install

4- enough 5- many

4- Read and match.

1- (b) 2- (c) 3- (d) 4- (a)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- 200 2- water

3- It is from Egypt. 4- To move machines.

6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

1- The lion is dangerous.

2- Volunteers help other people.

إجابات المادق

Story (Fares and the fish)

Activities

1) Read and answer the following questions.

- 1) He lived in Hurghada.
- 2) Sometimes he walked and sometimes he cycled.
- 3) So he could cycle to the sports center.
- 4) They were on their skateboards.

2) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1) ✓ 2) ✗ 3) ✗ 4) ✗

3) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) athlete sports center competitions.
4) cycled 5) sunny

Activities

1) Read and answer the following questions.

- 1) At the top of the ramp. 2) He slipped and fell.
- 3) An ambulance. 4) A cast.

2) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1) ✓ 2) ✗ 3) ✗ 4) ✓

3) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) ramp 2) quickly 3) fell 4) move
5) ambulance 6) X-ray 7) bone 8) cast

Activities

1) Read and answer the following questions.

- 1) He lay down on his bed.
- 2) Because he had a stupid accident.
- 3) They watched a movie. 4) A large fish tank.

2) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1) ✓ 2) ✗ 3) ✗ 4) ✓

3) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) bed 2) family 3) accident 4) swim
5) worried 6) happy 7) fish tank 8) fish

Activities

1) Read and answer the following questions.

- 1) He enjoyed watching the fish.

2) The names of the different types of fish.

3) A mask and a snorkel.

4) He could see lots of fish.

2) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1) ✓ 2) ✗ 3) ✓ 4) ✗ 5) ✓

3) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) fish 2) names 3) leg 4) swim
5) beach 6) mask 7) swim 8) fish

General Activities

1) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1) ✓ 2) ✗ 3) ✓ 4) ✓
5) ✗ 6) ✓ 7) ✓ 8) ✗

2) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) (f) 2) (c) 3) (a)
4) (e) 5) (d) 6) (b)

3) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) Adam 2) Adam 3) Fares
4) Wael 5) Dalia 6) Wael

4) Read and correct the bold words.

- 1) walked 2) worried 3) swim
4) beautiful 5) watching

5) Complete the following sentences.

- 1) Because he had a stupid accident and he couldn't swim.
- 2) Dalia wanted him to borrow her comic. Wael asked him to watch TV.
- 3) No, he wasn't.
- 4) He said, "I'm sorry. I was rude."
- 5) To the beach.
- 6) To spend a day at the beach.
- 7) He gave him a mask and a snorkel to swim and breathe underwater.
- 8) He saw lots of fish.
- 9) I think he felt happy.

Model Answers

Activities on Unit (1)

1. Look and complete.

athlete	race	city	penal
ice	snack	amel	medal
runner	camera	distance	plastic

2. Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

lired	team	high
cake	city	slow
fast	fit	far

3. Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

distance	event	throw
compete	do	easy
make	apologize	spread
scored	minute	fast
medal	far	exercise

4. Choose the correct word. (Language)

won't	throwing	win
will	or	farthest
because	Listen	because
be	win	tallest
older		

5. Read and match.

c	d	b	a
---	---	---	---

6. Read and match.

d	b	a	c
---	---	---	---

7. Read the passage then answer the questions.

athletes jumping
We're at the track. Toka is the fastest.

8. Look and write a sentence under each picture.

I like the long jump. Support your friends.
She came first. The athletes are running.

9. Read and rearrange.

Will they be tired?
There's a big sports event.
How high can he jump?
Who was the fastest?
Will it be a good competition?
Which sport do you think is easy?
I like running and jumping.
Who do you think will win?
Listen to your friend's ideas.

Activities on Unit (2)

1. Look and complete.

soul	skeleton	lungs	blood
kick	bone	muscle	heart
elbow	helmet	sunscreen	so much

2. Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

bone	heart	lungs
helmet	skin	brain
climb	book	skull

3. Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

beats	skeleton	nutrients
sunscreen	hungry	tired
skin	sunburn	teeth
important	saliva	swallow

4. Choose the correct word. (Language)

going	she	drink
isn't	Are	are
go	aren't	is
to	you	are
he	have	today

5. Read and match.

(c)	(d)	(a)	(b)
-----	-----	-----	-----

6. Read and match.

(d)	(a)	(b)	(c)
-----	-----	-----	-----

7. Read the passage then answer the questions.

muscles hard
It's all the bones in the body.
They protect soft organs.

8. Look and write a sentence under each picture.

He is going to have breakfast.
She chews food with her teeth.
He is going to climb a mountain.
Our skeleton helps us move.

9. Read and rearrange.

Veins carry blood from the body to the heart.
I'm going to go to the park.
We chew food with our teeth.
We need to protect our body.
Oxygen is a gas.
She is going to ride a horse.
Do you ever skip breakfast?
We're going to drink water.
Is he going to wear sunscreen?
Do you play outside every day?

10. Complete the following dialogue with:

beach	going	swim	nice
-------	-------	------	------

Activities on Unit (3)

1. Look and complete.

vegetables	fruit	protein
dairy	fiber	carbohydrates
digestion	nutrients	delicious
sugar	cereal bar	dried fruit bar

2. Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

fiction	pollution	fire station
nutrients	digestion	salt

3. Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

vitamins	nutrients	dairy
fats	carbohydrates	fiber
Calcium	dehydrated	hydrated
calories	grams	percent
brownie	bar	Dried

10. Calories 17. electricity 18. containers
19. good 20. diet
1. Choose the correct word. (Language)
1. should 2. should 3. do
4. Should 5. should 6. shouldn't
7. play 8. eat 9. No 10. Should he

4. Read and match.
1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (c)

5. Read and match.
1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (d) 4. (c)

6. Read the passage then answer the questions.
1. cold 2. salt
3. In pots 4. The water in the sand.

6. Look and write a sentence under each picture.

Fruit gives us vitamins.
You should drink fruit juice.
We shouldn't eat candies every day.
I like dried fruit.

7. Read and rearrange.

1. Hanaa shouldn't drink soda.
2. Hany should eat healthy food.
3. Should he eat lots of cakes?
4. I like eating chocolate brownie.
5. I like dried fruit bars.
6. Sugar is bad for your heart.
7. Sugar can affect your mood.
8. I decided to eat less sugar.
9. There's protein in fish and meat.
10. I like cookies.

8. Complete the following dialogue with:

1. balanced 2. Should 3. vitamins 4. bad

Activities on Unit (4)

1. Look and complete.

chimpanzee fennec fox sealion turtle
grassland polar camp tent
hunt goose macaw volcano

2. Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

macaw cobra sloth
wetland penguin cheetah
flood building fire

3. Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

1. emergent 2. colony 3. build
4. An Arctic fox 5. Crayfish 6. equator
7. Tropical 8. hunt 9. Macaws
10. fur 11. four 12. North Pole
13. a river 14. close 15. canopy
16. floor 17. drought 18. crawl
19. flood 20. Pollution

4. Choose the correct word. (Language)

1. eat 2. might not 3. build 4. be

5. live 6. might be 7. might not 8. eat

4. Read and match.

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (d) 4. (b)

5. Read and match.

1. (d) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (c)

5. Look and write a sentence under each picture.

Turtles live in swamps.
Smoke pollutes the air.
We need a tent.
Cheetahs hunt for food.
Fennec fox has big ears.
Owls live in holes in trees.

6. Read the passage then answer the questions.

1. watching 2. shelter
3. They live close to their natural habitats.
4. So that they can stay warm and be safe.

7. Read and rearrange.

1. I visited a wildlife park.
2. Thousands of penguins can live together.
3. Rabbits and foxes dig burrows.
4. A spider monkey eats fruit.
5. Wolves have light colored fur.
6. The equator gets the most sunshine.
7. What habitats do you know in Egypt?
8. Sloths live in the canopy layer.

Activities on Unit (5)

1. Look and complete.

sh. d. bas. l. oasis l. k.
s. lt. doct. shelt. precip. ition
polar cobra river fur

2. Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

wood water rain
lake cobra vapor
olive tree spring hump

3. Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

1. shelter 2. Cobra 3. evaporation
4. salt 5. four 6. skin
7. wide 8. spines 9. hunt
10. swam 11. hot 12. springs

4. Choose the correct word. (Language)

1. have 2. visited 3. have
4. ever 5. eaten 6. swum
7. climbed 8. never 9. has
10. have 11. Have you 12. walked
13. hasn't 14. have 15. he

5. Read the passage then answer the questions.

1. Interesting 2. friendly
3. It has a lot of monuments. 4. In springs.

6. Read and match.

1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (d) 4. (c)

Model Answers

- 1- (b) 2- (a) 3- (d) 4- (c)

6- Read and rearrange.

- 1- Have they cooked with oil?
- 2- People grow spear mint in an oasis.
- 3- I've never eaten dates.
- 4- We have climbed a mountain.
- 5- The desert is hot and dry.
- 6- Basil has minerals and vitamins.
- 7- They have visited Cairo.
- 8- She hasn't tired swimming in a lake.
- 9- The Dead Sea is a small sea.
- 10- People can swim in springs.

7- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- been 2- camel 3- fresh 4- delicious

8- Look and write a sentence under each picture:

- He has climbed a mountain.
I've never eaten olives.

Activities on Unit (6)

1- Look and complete.

- lazy generous nervous dangerous
famous enormous water wheel aqueduct

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

- barrier canal flood
collapse caring generous
shadoof pipe dam

3- Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

- 1- barrier 2- dam 3- Ruin
4- Predict 5- weather 6- Minimize
7- protect 8- selfish 9- generous
10- enormous 11- bossy 12- polite

4- Choose the correct word. (Language)

- 1- much 2- many 3- enough
4- enough 5- too many 6- too many
7- enough 8- enough 9- too
10- enough 11- much 12- many

4- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- predict 2- weather
3- On cellphones.
4- To keep their homes safe.

5- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- A dam stops water in a river.
- A generous person gives people presents.
- There are too many trees.
- The statue is enormous.
- Waterwheels are used in irrigation.
- A caring person looks after people.

6- Read and rearrange.

- 1- There are too many apples.
- 2- A dam stops water in a river.
- 3- Barriers can protect buildings.
- 4- Collapse is to fall down.

- 5- There isn't enough paper.

- 6- He works very hard.

- 7- The statue is enormous!

- 8- What is the problem with irrigation?

- 9- Why is the Aswan Dam famous?

- 10- Waterwheels can help with irrigation.

7- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- flood 2- When 3- lightning 4- much

Activities

Activity (1)

1- Look and complete.

- jump athlete medal throw

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- track 2- was 3- race 4- first

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- will 2- second 3- fastest 4- measuring

4- Read and match.

- 1- (c) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (b)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- athletes 2- medals
3- No, they didn't. 4- Three times a week.

6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- She can jump high.
- The athletes are on the track.

Activity (2)

1- Look and complete.

- helmet climb skeleton lungs

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- going 2- park 3- ride 4- am

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- beats 2- wear 3- liquid 4- Is

4- Read and match.

- 1- (d) 2- (a) 3- (b) 4- (c)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- x 2- ✓ 3- x 4- ✓

6- Fill in the spaces with:

- 1- far 2- Blood 3- should 4- nests

Activity (3)

1- Look and complete.

- sugar vegetables fiber dairy

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- should 2- healthy
3- fats 4- unhealthy

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- mineral 2- cakes
3- get 4- shouldn't

4- Read and match.

- 1- (b) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (c)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- pure
- 2- sweat
- 3- Children should drink about 1.5 litres of water.
- 4- In hot weather.

6- Rearrange the following words.

- 1- You should eat a healthy lunch.
- 2- It might live in Africa.
- 3- I've never eaten olives.

Activity (4)

1- Look and complete.

chimpanzee macaw cobra nest

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- tomorrow
- 2- wildlife
- 3- sloth
- 4- slowly

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- cheetah
- 2- take
- 3- hotter
- 4- might

4- Read and match.

- 1- (d)
- 2- (a)
- 3- (b)
- 4- (c)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- snow
- 2- warm
- 3- It's a place with a particular kind of climate and landscape.
- 4- They are in tropical parts of the world.

6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

- The North Pole is cold.
- Birds build nests in trees.

Activity (5)

1- Look and complete.

spring river condensation palm tree

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- ever
- 2- Siwa
- 3- fresh
- 4- delicious

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- seen
- 2- olive
- 3- protection
- 4- ever

4- Read and match.

- 1- (c)
- 2- (d)
- 3- (a)
- 4- (b)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- trees
- 2- hot
- 3- They grow tall date palm trees.
- 4- We can cook with dates or eat them.

6- Rearrange the following words.

- 1- Have you ever visited an oasis?
- 2- There is too much water.
- 3- Is she going to climb the mountain?

Activity (6)

1- Look and complete.

sandbags apples barrel pump

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- cake
- 2- enough
- 3- many
- 4- buy

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- dam
- 2- much
- 3- trees
- 4- Protect

4- Read and match.

- 1- (b)
- 2- (d)
- 3- (a)
- 4- (c)

Model Answers

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- x
 - 2- ✓
 - 3- x
 - 4- ✓
- 6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.
- The High Dam is famous.
 - There isn't enough water.

Activity (7)

1- Look and complete.

throw train runner cyclist

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- swimming
- 2- don't
- 3- sport
- 4- jump

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- event
- 2- win
- 3- distance
- 4- because

4- Read and match.

- 1- (d)
- 2- (c)
- 3- (b)
- 4- (a)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- x
 - 2- x
 - 3- ✓
 - 4- ✓
- 6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.
- He has won a medal.
 - You should do exercise every day.

Activity (8)

1- Look and complete.

brain muscle blood skull

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- skip
- 2- unhealthy
- 3- much
- 4- cups

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- hard
- 2- going
- 3- skip
- 4- skeleton

4- Read and match.

- 1- (b)
- 2- (c)
- 3- (d)
- 4- (a)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- healthy
- 2- mouths
- 3- We get energy and nutrients.
- 4- It's a liquid made in our mouth.

6- Fill in the spaces with:

- 1- jump
- 2- gas
- 3- eggs
- 4- penguin

Activity (9)

1- Look and complete.

chocolate delicious digestion fruit

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

- 1- dairy
- 2- milk
- 3- minerals
- 4- calcium

3- Choose the correct word.

- 1- drink
- 2- bad
- 3- sugar
- 4- shouldn't

4- Read and match.

- 1- (c)
- 2- (d)
- 3- (a)
- 4- (b)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

- 1- x
 - 2- ✓
 - 3- ✓
 - 4- x
- 6- Rearrange the following words.
- 1- Should I drink water?

Model Answers

- 2- It was a spider monkey.
- 3- What is a flood?

Activity (10)

1- Look and complete.

sloth burrow wetland camp

2- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- go 2- park 3- see 4- wild

3- Choose the correct word.

1- grassland 2- Deforestation

3- might 4- live

4- Read and match.

1- (c) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (b)

5- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- Owls 2- shelter

3- In trees.

4- They use grass, sticks and leaves.

6- Look and write a sentence under each picture.

The cheetah is the fastest animal.

Penguins live in a colony.

Activity (11)

1- Look and complete.

chimpanzees desert oasis sandbags

2- Look at the pictures and unscramble the letters.

cheetah tent barrier

3- Complete the following dialogue with:

1- visited 2- have

3- ridden 4- haven't

4- Choose the correct word.

1- palm 2- equator 3- visited 4- enough

5- Read and match.

1- (c) 2- (d) 3- (b) 4- (a)

7- Read the passage then answer the questions.

1- acacia 2- generous

3- She gives me enormous presents.

4- I like the acacia tree so much.